



# Islands Trust Conservancy

## Regular Meeting Agenda

Date: Tuesday, January 26, 2021  
Time: 10:00 am  
Location: Electronic Zoom Meeting

---

### Pages

#### 1. CALL TO ORDER

- 1.1. Election of Chair and Vice-Chair
- 1.2. Staffing Updates (verbal)

#### 2. APPROVAL OF AGENDA

#### 3. RISE AND REPORT

None

#### 4. MINUTES/COORDINATION

- 4.1. Minutes of Meetings/Resolutions without Meetings
  - 4.1.1. Approval of November 24, 2020 Meeting Minutes 3 - 11
- 4.2. Follow-up Action List 12 - 18

#### 5. BUSINESS

- 5.1. Items for Approval
  - 5.1.1. Lasqueti Official Community Plan Referral, Bylaw 98 - Request for Decision 19 - 24
  - 5.1.2. Species at Risk Project Charter - Request for Decision 25 - 35
  - 5.1.3. Deep Ridge Nature Reserve Management Plan, Salt Spring - Request for Decision 36 - 93
  - 5.1.4. Lower Mt Erskine Nature Reserve Management Plan, Salt Spring - Request for Decision 94 - 164
  - 5.1.5. ITC Town Hall - Request for Decision 165 - 166
- 5.2. Items for Discussion/Direction
  - None
- 5.3. Correspondence

|        |                                                       |           |
|--------|-------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| 5.3.1. | Proposed VQOs for Lasqueti Island, Response to MFLNRO | 167 - 169 |
|--------|-------------------------------------------------------|-----------|

**5.4. Updates for Information**

|        |                                                                                                       |           |
|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| 5.4.1. | Executive Committee Updates (verbal)                                                                  |           |
| 5.4.2. | Public Acquisitions Report                                                                            | 170 - 173 |
| 5.4.3. | Public Covenants Report                                                                               | 174 - 180 |
| 5.4.4. | Budget Report                                                                                         | 181 - 181 |
| 5.4.5. | Guidance for Open Meetings and Electronic Meetings under Current PHO Orders and Ministerial Order 192 | 182 - 185 |

**6. NEW BUSINESS**

**7. NEXT MEETING**

The next meeting is scheduled for Tuesday, March 30, 2021

**8. CLOSED MEETING**

**8.1. Motion to Close the Meeting**

That the meeting be closed to the public in accordance with the Community Charter, Part 4 Division 3, section: 90 (1) (d) the security of the property of the Islands Trust Conservancy board; and (e) the acquisition, disposition or expropriation of land or improvements, if the board considers that disclosure could reasonably be expected to harm the interests of the Islands Trust Conservancy board; (k) negotiations and related discussions respecting the proposed provision of a service that are at their preliminary stages and that, in the view of the board, could reasonably be expected to harm the interests of the Islands Trust Conservancy board if they were held in public; and that staff be invited to remain in the meeting.

**9. ADJOURNMENT**



# Islands Trust Conservancy

## Minutes of Regular Meeting

**Date:** Tuesday, November 24, 2020

**Time:** 10:00 am

**Location:** Electronic Zoom Meeting

**Board Members Present** Kate-Louise Stamford, Chair  
Sue Ellen Fast, Vice Chair  
Linda Adams  
Donald Clarke  
Doug Fenton (joined the meeting at 12:45 pm)

**Staff Present** Kate Emmings, Acting ITC Manager  
Clare Frater, Director, Trust Area Services (joined the meeting at 12:45 pm)  
Julia Mobbs, Director, Administrative Services (joined the meeting at 12:45 pm and left the meeting at 1:05 pm)  
Carla Funk, Acting Communications & Fundraising Specialist  
Jemma Green, Covenant Management & Outreach Specialist  
Kathryn Martell, Acting Ecosystems Protection Specialist  
Nuala Murphy, Property Management Specialist  
Corlynn Strachan, Recorder

### 1. CALL TO ORDER

Chair Stamford called the meeting to order at 10:01 am and acknowledged that the meeting was being held in Coast Salish First Nations territory.

### 2. APPROVAL OF AGENDA

**By general consent**, the Islands Trust Conservancy Board approved the agenda as presented.

#### 2.1 Continuation of Electronic Meetings

**ITC-2020-034**

**It was MOVED and SECONDED,**

That in order to meet the principles of openness, transparency, and accessibility, meetings of the Islands Trust Conservancy Board will be held electronically until Ministerial Orders under the Emergency Program Act and requirements or recommendations under the Public Health Act change regarding public attendance at trust body meetings; and that such meetings be live streamed, and the public invited to participate in meetings by connecting to the link or the phone number provided in the meeting notice, in order to observe proceedings and speak when invited by the Chair.

**CARRIED**

### **3. RISE AND REPORT**

Chair Stamford reported on the following items from the in-camera ITC Board meeting held October 6, 2020:

- The Trust Conservancy approved an Opportunity Fund Grant of \$5,000 to be awarded to the Bowen Island Conservancy.

### **4. MINUTES/COORDINATION**

#### **4.1 Minutes of Meetings/Resolutions without Meetings**

##### **4.1.1 Approval of the October 6, 2020 Meeting Minutes**

The following amendment(s) to the minutes were presented for consideration:

- Under Item 5.2.2 the word “acting” be removed from the title of the Covenant Management and Outreach Specialist.

**By general consent**, the minutes were adopted as amended.

#### **4.2 Follow-up Action List**

The acting Islands Trust Conservancy Manager provided an update on items in the Follow-up Action List. ITC Manager noted a briefing was sent to all the local trust committees and the Bowen Island Municipality regarding the forest outreach staff completed over the summer.

Trustee Fast advised she provided verbal updates to the Hornby, Denman and Gambier LTCs, and the Bowen Island Municipality on forest stewardship and forwarded information sheets.

Trustee Fast questioned if this may be a good time to revisit the direction to Integrate reminders into planning processes that provide opportunities for the Regional Conservation Plan to inform the work of the LTCs and BIM. The acting ITC Manager will follow up regarding integration of the RCP plan and noted a formal request from the Board is not required at this time.

Chair Stamford questioned how staff will report out for Species at Risk project and if there is a plan to provide a more detailed updates. The acting ITC Manager suggested creating a project charter to provide updates. A proposal to hire a SAR Coordinator was recently sent to Trust Council.

### **5. BUSINESS**

#### **5.1 Items for Approval**

##### **5.1.1 ITC Board 2021 Meeting Dates – RFD**

The acting ITC Manager commented it is challenging to find meeting dates that work due to coordination of meeting schedules with multiple units. Trustee Fast commented electronic meetings make it easier to accommodate tight meeting schedules. Board members did not identify any conflicts.



**ITC-2020-035**

**It was MOVED and SECONDED,**

that the Islands Trust Conservancy Board approves the 2021 Meeting Schedule, as attached.

**CARRIED**

**5.1.2 Electronic Meetings – RFD**

The acting ITC Manger advised other units are considering electronic meetings post COVID-19, noting logistical changes, consideration of legislation, and a revised bylaw would need to go through an approval process. Board members expressed interest in electronic meetings as regular practice, and discussion ensued on:

- importance of flexibility, and option to hold in-person meetings when necessary, as needed
- benefits including reduction of travel time, costs, and carbon footprint
- the role of the Conservancy and promoting best green practices
- guests, public, and potential collaborators can easily attend, and potential availability of meetings for donor outreach
- clarifying rules regarding public comments, and meeting procedures
- accommodating guests, or delegations, similar guidelines to council's meeting bylaw, subject to amendment by the Board
- Trustee Fast provided a link to the Gambier Island Local Trust Committee document, Guidelines for Public Participation During Local Trust Committee Meetings, [http://www.islandstrust.bc.ca/media/348536/gm-ltc\\_2019-05-03\\_meetingguidelines.pdf](http://www.islandstrust.bc.ca/media/348536/gm-ltc_2019-05-03_meetingguidelines.pdf)
- A desire to review two options for a revised meeting bylaw, one that allows for complete electronic participation with optional

**ITC-2020-036**

**It was MOVED and SECONDED,**

that the Islands Trust Conservancy Board direct staff to investigate the use of electronic meetings and return to the Board with a revised meeting bylaw to increase use of electronic meetings if possible.

**CARRIED**

**5.1.3 Moss Mountain NAPTEP Proposal, Salt Spring – RFD**

The acting Ecosystem Protection Specialist presented the proposal to Board members commenting the property is largely undeveloped, provides connectivity to multiple parks and is an excellent match for Species at Risk funding.

**ITC-2020-037**

**It was MOVED and SECONDED,**

that the Islands Trust Conservancy Board approve the conservation proposal submitted by Gay Young to place a NAPTEP covenant on approximately 45 ha on Salt Spring Island, PID: 006-760-112, LOT 12, SECTIONS 64, 65, 66, 67 AND 68, SOUTH SALT SPRING ISLAND, COWICHAN DISTRICT, PLAN 1914.

**CARRIED**

**ITC-2020-038**

**It was MOVED and SECONDED,**

that the Islands Trust Conservancy Board approve spending of up to \$20,000 to assist the landowner with surveying and appraisal costs.

**CARRIED**

5.1.4 R. Leader NAPTEP Proposal, SS – RFD

The acting Ecosystem Protection Specialist presented the proposal highlighting this property is already covenanted, and even though it is a small parcel, there is value of conservation in the wetland, based on climate change perspectives.

**ITC-IC-2020-039**

**It was MOVED and SECONDED,**

that the Islands Trust Conservancy Board approve the conservation proposal submitted by Robert Leader to place a NAPTEP covenant on approximately 5 ha on Salt Spring Island, PID: 000-395-081, LOT 2, SECTION 72, SOUTH SALT SPRING ISLAND, COWICHAN DISTRICT, PLAN 36292 Except Plan 40974

**CARRIED**

5.1.5 Nature Reserve Monitoring – RFD

The Property Management Specialist summarized the report and advised the Medicine Beach Nature Sanctuary, North Pender, was accidentally omitted from the report. The following information was added to page three on the report:

**Medicine Beach (E,HO,) Nature Sanctuary** was visited on October 22, 2020 by Nuala Murphy accompanied by G. Boffey (Pender Islands Conservancy Association). The management objectives for the reserve are being met and no public safety issues were identified.

***Recommendation:*** Work with Pender Islands Conservancy Association to repair a rotten fence post and improve signage. Repair a few of the steps to the forest trail from the parking lot and install two water-bars (a diagonal channel across the trail that will divert surface water off the trail) on the steep portion of the forest trail from Aldridge Road to the parking lot.

**ITC-2020-040**

**It was MOVED and SECONDED,**

that the Islands Trust Conservancy accept the “Islands Trust Conservancy Nature Reserve Monitoring Report 2020” with the addition of the Medicine Beach Nature Sanctuary update, as provided at the November 24, 2020 meeting.

**CARRIED**

5.1.6 NAPTEP Monitoring – RFD

The Covenant Management and Outreach Specialist summarized the report and highlighted this was the first NAPTEP report to be prepared fully in house.

Board members noted the number of invasive species issues in the report and appreciated the information provided by the Covenant Management and Outreach Specialist regarding plans to send out educational information to landowners.

Chair Stamford thanked the Property Management Specialist, Nuala Murphy and the Covenant Management and Outreach Specialist, Jemma Green for carrying out their monitoring work during the pandemic and the extra effort they took to safely engage with property owners and organizations.

**ITC-IC-2020-041**

**It was MOVED and SECONDED,**

that the Islands Trust Conservancy accept the Islands Trust Conservancy NAPTEP Covenant Monitoring Report 2020 and direct staff to address breaches as identified in the report.

**CARRIED**

**5.2 Items for Discussion/Direction**

**5.2.1 ITC Board Training Options - BRF**

The acting ITC Manager advised there is currently a \$4,000 training budget available for ITC Board members, noting that due to COVID-19 many training opportunities have moved online and suggested that providers could be brought in to conduct training through Zoom or electronically.

Discussion ensued on the following topics:

- Training on cultural sites, property management, considerations and confidentiality
- Training related to the Fund Development Strategy and communication with donors
- First Nations and reconciliation webinars
- Celebrating conservation achievements such as Salish View
- Desire for training on Species at Risk
- Potential Board member visits to properties in spring, once COVID-19 restrictions are lifted including Sandy Beach and/or new prospects

The Board indicated a preference for training on the following topics:

- Fund Development and Speaking with Donors
- Cultural Sites and Property Management
- Species at Risk in the ITC Area

**5.2.2 Sustainable Investing – BRF**

The acting ITC Manager reviewed the background, fundraising policies, and guidelines for investing highlighting that ITC is required to follow guidance in its Five-Year Plan, and noted that ITC needs to do its due diligence to ensure investments are robust and that it can receive monies back.

The Islands Trust Administrative Services Director noted the Islands Trust is limited by the Community Charter section 183 for investments and highlighted the “Impact GIC” offered by Cash Management Group at Canaccord Genuity Group (CGI) as a potential vehicle for investing noting rates of return on impact GICs are currently higher than big banks. The Islands Trust recently set up accounts with CGI.

The acting ITC Manager advised typically investing is done by staff with guidance of investment policy, noted this is a new direction we are pursuing and will report back to board on progress unless otherwise directed by the Board.

Board members commented they support this direction and noted this fits with impact investing, and addresses sustainable and ethical development on a global scale.

### 5.2.3 Budget Process Update – BRF

The acting ITC Manager reviewed the background and resolutions from the October 6, 2020 meeting.

Director Mobbs clarified the budget reduction exercise was requested of the organization as a whole and not targeted at the Conservancy Board noting potential reductions from other units were incorporated into the draft budget. The Conservancy budget request currently remains the same but is going to Trust Council in December, so there may be further changes.

Discussion ensued on the following:

- Fund Development Report delayed until January 2020.
- The Importance of keeping Fund Development in the budget.
- The acting Commination's and Fundraising Specialist stressed that due to COVID-19, we need to boost engagement in digital ways, increase frequency of Heron Newsletter, foster wills and gift planning, create our own outreach and advertising to financial planners, lawyers, and tax accounts.
- \$7,000 for Fund Development is a small figure to gain funds.
- The ITC could reduce its budget request in some areas to reflect budget reductions in other units.

#### **ITC-2020-042**

**It was MOVED and SECONDED,**

that the Islands Trust Conservancy (ITC) Board direct staff to request the following edits to the ITC Budget:

- \$2,000 reduction in board training;
- \$1,050 reduction in staff training; and
- \$550 in associated travel

for a total of \$3,600 in reduced spending.

**CARRIED**

## **5.3 Correspondence**

### 5.3.1 ITC to FLNRORD re: Visual Quality, LA

The acting ITC Manager noted the Visual Quality Objectives (VQO) for Lasqueti Island were being revised by the Ministry of Forests, Lands, Natural Resource Operations and Rural Development, and that the area adjacent to the ITC Mt. Trematon Nature Reserve was being removed from the VQO. Staff felt it was important to respond with the backing of our Regional Conservation Plan.

Board members commented that these type of changes can have serious impact to conservancy lands and communities as a whole and that this demonstrates the importance of building stronger relationships with the Province for better communication.

## **5.4 Updates for Information**

### **5.4.1 Executive Committee Update**

Trustee Fast provided an update noting Financial Advisory Committee has been busy with the upcoming Trust Council meeting. The agenda is posted on the Islands Trust website. Highlights of interest to the Conservancy include:

- Budget
- forest protection briefing
- community land trust briefing regarding holding land for affordable housing
- heritage preservation overlaid mapping
- review of trust Governance and Management
- accelerating staffing shifts in the planning department
- climate change stewardship webinars – eelgrass webinar

### **5.4.2 Public Acquisitions Report**

The acting ITC Manager advised the Sandy Beach Nature Reserve, Keats Island, transfer is not complete, and currently sitting with the Land Title Office. A news release is being drafted.

### **5.4.3 Public Covenants Report**

The acting ITC Manager advised Brooks Point Covenant, South Pender, is a complex file and ongoing with the CRD since 2014. The Pender Islands Conservancy has contacted CRD requesting a status update for the file.

The acting Ecosystem Protection Specialist noted we are waiting for the Batista Covenant applicant to sign the required documents and submit to the Land Titles Office.

Trustee Fast questioned if covenant and landowner information for nearby land is more readily available from the Land Title Office, through new digital mapping. The acting Ecosystems Protection Specialist noted new landowner transparency offered by LTO, notations on title and landowner information could be pulled.

### **5.4.4 Budget Report**

The acting ITC Manager highlighted a new Species at Risk line has been added to the report, noting we are largely on track for most of budget lines, but over in legal expenses due to change in legal services provider, additionally we cut our budget last year. An increase has been reflected in a proposal for next fiscal year.

The Opportunity Fund has an additional committed funds of \$10,000 for grants not claimed yet by the Denman Island Conservancy and Bowen Island Conservancy, which reduces the fund to \$10,000. The ITC has done an appeal for fund donations through the Heron mail out and soon to come out via E-news. We will continue with fund development options in the New Year.

The acting ITC Manager noted the Morrison Waxler Legacy Fund has had no uptake due to strict conditions on the fund, and staff are reviewing how to proceed with the fund following a direction from the Board at an earlier meeting.

Chair Stamford suggested a Christmas appeal to Trustees in early December and volunteered to work with the acting Communications and Fundraising Specialist to send out an appeal.

#### 5.4.5 Heron Newsletter

The acting ITC Manager advised the Heron Fall 2020 edition was recently mailed to all constituents, is posted on the ITC website, and will go out digitally soon through E-News.

The acting ITC Communications and Fundraising specialist noted changes to the Heron are science based changes to appeal to donors including:

- Increase font size, less formal and corporate looking
- more personalized, conversational and chatty feel, goal of more approachable, people stories, engaging
- inspirational, encourages readers to look inside
- key facts, news worthy, timely calls to action
- shift to 3 times per year
- move to 4 pager rather than 8

Board members commented on the following:

- appealing for potential donors, likes idea of more often
- likes new format and layout, faces of staff make it personable
- importance of a social media page and sharing partners

## 6. **NEW BUSINESS**

There was no new business.

## 7. **NEXT MEETING**

The next meeting will take place on January 26, 2021 at 10:00 am.

## 8. **CLOSED MEETING**

The Islands Trust Conservancy Board convened the closed portion of the meeting at 1:00 pm. Rise and Report will be carried out at the next regular meeting if applicable.

### 8.1 **Motion to Close the Meeting**

**ITC-2020-043**

**It was MOVED and SECONDED,**

that the meeting be closed to the public in accordance with the Community Charter, Part 4 Division 3, section: 90 (1) (d) the security of the property of the Islands Trust Conservancy board; and (e) the acquisition, disposition or expropriation of land or improvements, if the board considers that disclosure could reasonably be expected to harm the interests of the Islands Trust Conservancy board; and that staff be invited to remain in the meeting.

**CARRIED**

**9. ADJOURNMENT**

**By general consent,** the meeting adjourned at 1:20 pm.

---

Kate-Louise Stamford, Chair

Certified Correct:

---

Corlynn Strachan, Recorder

## Follow Up Action Report

### Trust Conservancy Board

#### 24-Sep-2010

| Activity                                                                                                                                                            | Responsibility              | Dates               | Status      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------|-------------|
| 1 Staff to work with landowners to clarify wording of Cunningham Covenant (Salt Spring) regarding vegetation removal, while maintaining conservation as a priority. | Jemma Green<br>Kate Emmings | Target: 31-Dec-2020 | In Progress |

#### 31-Mar-2015

| Activity                                                                                                                              | Responsibility               | Dates               | Status      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------|-------------|
| 1 Staff to prepare possible revisions to the Trust Council Procedure 2.1.xxi Administration of the Crown Land Acquisition Initiative. | Clare Frater<br>Kate Emmings | Target: 21-Mar-2019 | In Progress |

#### 27-Nov-2018

| Activity                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Responsibility               | Dates               | Status      |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------|-------------|
| 1 Staff to continue to pursue the following options and report back to the ITC board regarding their status at future board meetings until they are complete:<br>... 3. Integrate reminders into planning processes that provide opportunities for the RCP to inform the work of the LTCs and BIM such as integration of RCP consideration into LTC Staff Report and Site Context Report templates and investigate with BIM to see if they can be integrated into BIM templates... | David Marlor<br>Kate Emmings | Target: 15-Nov-2019 | In Progress |



## Follow Up Action Report

### Trust Conservancy Board

#### 27-Nov-2018

| Activity                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Responsibility                       | Dates                      | Status             |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|----------------------------|--------------------|
| <p>2 Staff to continue to pursue the following options and report back to the ITC board regarding their status at future board meetings until they are complete:</p> <p>... 4. Coordinate with Islands Trust Council to ensure that RCP goals are recognized in the Islands Trust Policy Statement and the Islands Trust Strategic Plan; ...</p> | <p>Clare Frater<br/>Kate Emmings</p> | <p>Target: 18-Dec-2020</p> | <p>In Progress</p> |

#### 29-Jan-2019

| Activity                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Responsibility      | Dates                      | Status             |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|----------------------------|--------------------|
| <p>1 Staff to work with the Comox Valley Regional District and the Denman Conservancy Association on the location and design of the Lindsay Dickson Nature Reserve portion of the Denman Cross-island Trail and return to the Board for approval of the trail location and design prior to dedicating resources to developing the associated legal agreements.</p> | <p>Nuala Murphy</p> | <p>Target: 31-Dec-2020</p> | <p>In Progress</p> |

#### 26-Nov-2019

| Activity | Responsibility | Dates | Status |
|----------|----------------|-------|--------|
|----------|----------------|-------|--------|



## Follow Up Action Report

### Trust Conservancy Board

#### 26-Nov-2019

| Activity                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Responsibility                 | Dates               | Status      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------|-------------|
| <b>1</b> Staff to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) develop a modification agreement to allow for maintenance of the septic field in the Woodwinds NAPTEP Covenant (North Pender); and,</li> <li>b) allow for maintenance of the septic field in the Woodwinds NAPTEP Covenant; and,</li> <li>c) provide resources about alternatives to traditional septic fields to land owners contemplating septic field maintenance or replacement, and new covenants.</li> </ul> | Jemma Green<br>Kathryn Martell | Target: 30-Jun-2020 | In Progress |

#### 13-Feb-2020

| Activity                                                                                                                                                                   | Responsibility             | Dates               | Status    |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------|-----------|
| <b>1</b> Staff to create an action plan that addresses the recommendations in the Fund Development Strategy for Islands Trust Conservancy Board review by the end of 2020. | Carla Funk<br>Kate Emmings | Target: 31-Dec-2020 | Completed |

#### 26-May-2020

| Activity | Responsibility | Dates | Status |
|----------|----------------|-------|--------|
|----------|----------------|-------|--------|



## Follow Up Action Report

### Trust Conservancy Board

#### 26-May-2020

| Activity                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Responsibility                  | Dates               | Status      |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------|-------------|
| <b>1</b> Staff to complete the approved actions regarding the Morrison Waxler Biodiversity Protection Legacy Fund (North and South Pender) and to return to the ITC Board for approval.<br>*See IC minutes of May 26, 2020 meeting.                                                           | Carla Funk<br>Kate Emmings      | Target: 30-Jun-2021 | In Progress |
| <b>2</b> Determine and develop access for Fairyslipper Forest Nature Reserve (Thetis Island).<br>*See IC minutes of May 26, 2020 meeting.                                                                                                                                                     | Kathryn Martell<br>Nuala Murphy | Target: 30-Oct-2020 | In Progress |
| <b>3</b> It was MOVED and SECONDED, that the Islands Trust Conservancy Board approve the Climate Change Project Charter as drafted and request that staff forward the Climate Projections for Islands Trust Area final report to Trust Council and Bowen Island Municipality for information. | Kathryn Martell                 | Target: 31-Mar-2021 | In Progress |

#### 06-Oct-2020

| Activity | Responsibility | Dates | Status |
|----------|----------------|-------|--------|
|----------|----------------|-------|--------|



## Follow Up Action Report

### Trust Conservancy Board

06-Oct-2020

| Activity                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Responsibility              | Dates               | Status      |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------|-------------|
| <p>1 Staff to:</p> <p>1) use \$10,000 of the contribution provided as part of the Sandy Beach Nature Reserve (Keats Island) transfer to create a Property Management Fund with the purpose of providing for long term management of ITC Nature Reserves;</p> <p>2) use the remaining \$2,000 of the contribution provided as part of the Sandy Beach Nature Reserve transfer to revise and finalize the conservation covenant and baseline report for the Sandy Beach Nature Reserve; and,</p> <p>3) direct any remaining funds to the newly created Property Management Fund.</p> | Kate Emmings                | Target: 18-Dec-2021 | In Progress |
| <p>2 Staff to remove "Canada's" from the ITC tagline so that the tagline reads "Protecting islands in the Salish Sea".</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Erin Coulson                | Target: 31-Mar-2021 | In Progress |
| <p>3 Staff to revise the ITC vision statement as follows: The Islands Trust Conservancy vision is for a network of protected areas that preserve in perpetuity the natural systems of the islands in the Salish Sea.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Erin Coulson                | Target: 31-Oct-2020 | Completed   |
| <p>4 Staff to complete an ITC Reconciliation Action Plan that incorporates actions in Goal 2 of the Regional Conservation Plan.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Kate Emmings<br>Lisa Wilcox | Target: 31-Mar-2021 | In Progress |

## Follow Up Action Report

### Trust Conservancy Board

#### 06-Oct-2020

| Activity                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Responsibility | Dates               | Status    |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|---------------------|-----------|
| <b>5</b> Forest Conservation Outreach:<br>Staff to provide the location of the info sheets link to the PDF versions online for Trustee reference and provide a briefing on the outreach to LTCs, Executive Committee and the Bowen Island Municipality | Jemma Green    | Target: 31-Oct-2020 | Completed |

#### 24-Nov-2020

| Activity                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Responsibility                     | Dates               | Status      |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|---------------------|-------------|
| <b>1</b> Staff to investigate the use of electronic meetings and return to the Board with a revised meeting bylaw to increase use of electronic meetings if possible.                                                             | Carmen Thiel<br>Kate Emmings       | Target: 31-Mar-2021 | In Progress |
| <b>2</b> Staff to report back to board on the progress of of sustainable investing using the "Impact GIC" offered by Cash Management Group at Canaccord Genuity.                                                                  | Kate Emmings                       | Target: 31-Mar-2021 | In Progress |
| <b>3</b> Staff to make the following edits to the ITC Budget:<br>·\$2,000 reduction in board training;<br>·\$1,050 reduction in staff training; and<br>·\$550 in associated travel<br>for a total of \$3,600 in reduced spending. | Kate Emmings                       | Target: 30-Nov-2020 | Completed   |
| <b>4</b> Chair Stamford to work with the acting Communications and Fundraising Specialist to send out a Christmas appeal to Trustees in early December.                                                                           | Carla Funk<br>Kate-Louise Stamford | Target: 15-Dec-2020 | Completed   |



## Follow Up Action Report

### Trust Conservancy Board

24-Nov-2020

| Activity                                                                          | Responsibility | Dates               | Status      |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|---------------------|-------------|
| 5 Staff to investigate board training options for delivery in the early New Year. | Kate Emmings   | Target: 29-Jan-2021 | In Progress |



## REQUEST FOR DECISION

**To:** ITC Board **For the Meeting of:** January 26, 2021  
**From:** Staff **Date Prepared:** January 18, 2021

**SUBJECT: Lasqueti Official Community Plan Referral, Bylaw 98**

---

**RECOMMENDATION:** That the Islands Trust Conservancy indicate to the Lasqueti Island Local Trust Committee that it recommends approval of proposed Bylaw 98 (OCP), subject to the following conditions:

- 1) Development of a “Parks and Protected Areas” land use under Section 3.5 to clarify which uses are allowed on ITC Nature Reserves;
- 2) Addition of a Parks and Protected Areas land use designation to Schedule B to clarify uses available for protected lands; and,
- 3) Consultation between Islands Trust planning staff and ITC staff in the development of land use objectives for Parks and Protected Areas that are conducive to the uses in ITC Nature Reserves.

---

**1 PURPOSE:** To provide guidance to the ITC Board regarding a response to the referral from the Lasqueti Island Local Trust Committee of the Lasqueti Island Official Community Plan, Bylaw 98.

**2 BACKGROUND**

The Lasqueti Island Local Trust Committee is engaging in a comprehensive review of its Official Community Plan (OCP). Community engagement began in April 2018 and support for the Islands Trust’s “preserve and protect mandate”, including a focus on strengthening relations with Tla’amin Nation and other Nations, was identified as an overarching priority for the review (see [Lasqueti Island Local Trust Committee, OCP Review Project](#)).

Under existing policies, local trust committees are required to refer bylaws that affect ITC managed lands to the ITC Board for comment. As OCPs designate permitted land uses, including those on ITC lands, ITC staff have reviewed the proposed Lasqueti Island OCP. Within the OCP, ITC managed Nature Reserves are designated as “Land Based” and any or all of the objectives and policies in the OCP apply to the ITC Nature Reserves.

For the purposes of this review, ITC staff have assumed that section 3.1 *Environmental Stewardship* is the most applicable to land use on ITC Nature Reserves. The objectives and policies in this section are compatible with the current use of ITC Nature Reserves. However, because it is unclear to ITC staff which other OCP objectives and policies apply to ITC Nature Reserves, staff recommend that the ITC Board ask for increased clarity regarding the land use designations for ITC Nature Reserves.

**3 IMPLICATIONS OF RECOMMENDATION**

**ORGANIZATIONAL:** Official Community Plan (OCP) land use designations, objectives and policies guide the uses allowed on ITC managed lands. OCP reviews do not happen regularly and the referral process between the Lasqueti Island Local Trust Committee and the ITC Board is the opportunity to comment on land use designation of ITC management lands as well as OCP objectives and policies that relate to the work of the ITC.

**FINANCIAL:** None.

**POLICY:** None.

**IMPLEMENTATION/COMMUNICATIONS:** Staff will provide the ITC Board response to the Lasqueti Island Local Trust Committee and will work with planning staff to address concerns identified.

**FIRST NATIONS:** None. The Lasqueti Island Local Trust Committee is responsible for engagement of First Nations regarding the Lasqueti OCP. Referrals have been sent to: Lyackson First Nation, Stz'uminus First Nation, Ts'uubaa-asatx First Nation, Halalt First Nation, Cowichan Tribes, Penelakut Tribe, Tla'amin First Nation, T'Mexw Treaty Association, Sechelt First Nation, Nanwakolas Council, Snaw-Naw-As First Nation, Wei Wai Kum Nation, K'omoks First Nation, and Qualicum First Nation.

**CLIMATE CHANGE:** None. The draft OCP includes Climate Change objectives and policies.

4 **RELEVANT POLICY(S):**

- [ITC Policy 3.1, Islands Trust Conservancy and Local Planning Services Coordination](#)
- [MOU between the Lasqueti Island Local Trust Committee and the Islands Trust Conservancy concerning Coordination of Activities](#) (Oct 1996)

5 **ATTACHMENT(S):**

- Email RE Lasqueti OCP Referral, Dec 3, 2020
- [Lasqueti Island Local Trust Committee, Official Community Plan, Proposed Bylaw 98, November 2020](#)
- [Lasqueti Island Local Trust Committee, Official Community Plan, Proposed Bylaw 98, Schedule B, November 2020](#)
- DRAFT Bylaw Referral Form

---

**RESPONSE OPTIONS**

**Recommendation:** That the Islands Trust Conservancy indicate to the Lasqueti Island Local Trust Committee that it recommends approval of proposed Bylaw 98 (OCP), subject to the following conditions:

- 1) Development of a "Parks and Protected Areas" land use under Section 3.5 to clarify which uses are allowed on ITC Nature Reserves;
- 2) Addition of a Parks and Protected Areas land use designation to Schedule B to clarify uses available for protected lands; and,
- 3) Consultation between Islands Trust planning staff and ITC staff in the development of land use objectives for Parks and Protected Areas that are conducive to the uses in ITC Nature Reserves.

**Alternatives:**

- 1) That the Islands Trust Conservancy indicate to the Lasqueti Island Local Trust Committee that its interests are unaffected by proposed Bylaw 98 (OCP).
- 2) That the Islands Trust Conservancy indicate to the Lasqueti Island Local Trust Committee that it does not recommend approval of proposed Bylaw 98 (OCP) for the following reasons:  
*[insert reasons]*
- 3) That the Islands Trust Conservancy indicate to the Lasqueti Island Local Trust Committee that it recommends approval of proposed Bylaw 98 (OCP), subject to the following conditions:  
*[insert desired conditions]*

---

**Prepared By:** Kate Emmings, Manager



## Kate Emmings

---

**From:** Becky McErlean  
**Sent:** Thursday, December 3, 2020 3:54 PM  
**To:** Kate Emmings  
**Subject:** Bylaw Referral - Lasqueti Island - Bylaw No. 98 (OCP) - ITC  
**Attachments:** LA\_BL\_98\_BASE\_OCP\_1st.pdf; LA-LTC\_2018-6500-20-LA-OCP\_REFFORM.docx  
  
**Importance:** High

Hello Kate,

Please find attached a bylaw referral package related to Lasqueti Island from the Lasqueti Island Local Trust Committee of the Islands Trust regarding Bylaw No. 98.

The purpose of this bylaw is to review and update the Lasqueti Official Community Plan (OCP) policies in a manner which supports community participation, the object of the Islands Trust, and addresses community land use planning priorities. Proposed amendments to the OCP include additions and amendments to existing policies as well as an update of legislative references and referenced agencies.

**Proposed Bylaw No. 98** if adopted, will amend the Official Community Plan for the Lasqueti Island Local Trust Committee Area of the Islands Trust, respecting objectives and policies to guide decisions on planning and land use management

For background information please see the [Lasqueti Island Local Trust Committee Projects](http://www.islandstrust.bc.ca/islands/local-trust-areas/lasqueti/projects-initiatives/) webpage:  
<http://www.islandstrust.bc.ca/islands/local-trust-areas/lasqueti/projects-initiatives/>

To access the Lasqueti Island Official Community Plan and related land use bylaws, please click <http://www.islandstrust.bc.ca/islands/local-trust-areas/lasqueti/bylaws/>. In addition to seeking your input, this matter is also being forwarded to a number of First Nations and agencies.

We will be reviewing all responses on or before **January 22, 2021** and a referral response form is included for your convenience. If you have any questions or concerns regarding the proposed bylaw please contact Heather Kauer, Regional Planning Manager, by email to [hkauer@islandstrust.bc.ca](mailto:hkauer@islandstrust.bc.ca).

Responses should be addressed to [northinfo@islandstrust.bc.ca](mailto:northinfo@islandstrust.bc.ca). If we do not receive a reply from you within the time requested, we will proceed with the bylaw process.

Thank you for your attention to this matter.

Becky

Becky McErlean  
Legislative Clerk/Deputy Secretary  
Islands Trust  
700 North Road  
Gabriola Island, BC V0R 1X3  
Phone: 250-247-7922 (office)  
Enquiry BC Toll-free call 1-800-663-7867 or

From the lower mainland 604-660-2421

Websites: [www.islandtrust.bc.ca](http://www.islandtrust.bc.ca) | [www.islandstrustfund.bc.ca](http://www.islandstrustfund.bc.ca)  
*Preserving **Island** communities, culture and environment since 1974*



Islands Trust

# BYLAW REFERRAL FORM

700 North Road  
Gabriola Island BC V0R 1X3  
Ph: (250) 247-2063  
Fax: (250) 247-7514  
northinfo@islandstrust.bc.ca  
www.islandstrust.bc.ca

**Island:** Lasqueti Island Local Trust Area – Lasqueti Island **Bylaw No.:** 98 (OCP) **Date:** November 30, 2020

You are requested to comment on the attached Bylaw for potential effect on your agency's interests. We would appreciate your response within 45 days by **January 22, 2021**. If no response is received within that time, it will be assumed that your agency's interests are unaffected.

**APPLICANTS NAME / ADDRESS:**

N/A - Lasqueti Island Local Trust Committee initiated bylaw

**PURPOSE OF BYLAWS:**

A bylaw to amend the Official Community Plan for the Lasqueti Island Local Trust Committee Area of the Islands Trust, respecting objectives and policies to guide decisions on planning and land use management.

**GENERAL LOCATION:**

Lasqueti Island

**OTHER INFORMATION:**

The purpose of this bylaw is to review and update the Lasqueti Official Community Plan (OCP) policies in a manner which supports community participation, the object of the Islands Trust, and addresses community land use planning priorities. Proposed amendments to the OCP include additions and amendments to existing policies as well as an update of legislative references and referenced agencies.

Please direct any communications regarding this referral to Heather Kauer, Regional Planning Manager, at (250) 247-2209 or by email to [hkauer@islandstrust.bc.ca](mailto:hkauer@islandstrust.bc.ca).

**Please fill out the Response Summary on the back of this form for each bylaw. If your agency's interests are "Unaffected", no further information is necessary. In all other cases, we would appreciate receiving additional information to substantiate your position and, if necessary, outline any conditions related to your position. Please note any legislation or official government policy which would affect our consideration of this Bylaw.**

Heather Kauer

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: Regional Planning Manager

This referral has been sent to the following agencies:

**First Nations**

Lyackson First Nation, Stz'uminus First Nation  
Ts'uubaa-asatx First Nation, Halalt First Nation, Cowichan Tribes,  
Penelakut Tribe, Tla'amin First Nation, T'Mexw Treaty Association,  
Sechelt First Nation, Nanwakolas Council, Snaw-Naw-As First Nation, Wei  
Wai Kum Nation, K'omoks First Nation, Qualicum First

**Non-Agency Referrals**

Islands Trust Conservancy  
Islands Trust Freshwater Specialist  
Islands Trust Senior Policy Advisor

**Adjacent Local Trust Committees and Municipalities**

Hornby Local Trust Committee  
Denman Local Trust Committee

**Regional Agencies**

qathet Regional District  
Comox Regional District

**Provincial Agencies**

Ministry of Forests, Lands, Natural Resource Operations and Rural  
Development (FLNRORD)  
Ministry of Transportation and Infrastructure (MOTI)  
Vancouver Island Health Authority  
School District 69

PLEASE TURN OVER

# BYLAW REFERRAL FORM RESPONSE SUMMARY

DRAFT

☐

Approval Recommended for Reasons Outlined Below

☒

Approval Recommended Subject to Conditions Outlined Below

☐

Interests Unaffected by Bylaw

☐

Approval Not Recommended Due to Reason Outlined Below

At its January 26, 2021 meeting, the Islands Trust Conservancy passed the following resolution:

*That the Islands Trust Conservancy indicate to the Lasqueti Island Local Trust Committee that it recommends approval of proposed Bylaw 98 (OCP), subject to the following conditions:*

- 1) Development of a "Parks and Protected Areas" land use under Section 3.5 to clarify which uses are allowed on ITC Nature Reserves;*
- 2) Addition of a Parks and Protected Areas land use designation to Schedule B to clarify uses available for protected lands; and,*
- 3) Consultation between Islands Trust planning staff and ITC staff in the development of land use objectives for Parks and Protected Areas that are conducive to the uses in ITC Nature Reserves.*

Lasqueti Island Local Trust Area – Lasqueti Island

(Island)

Bylaw No. 98 (OCP)

(Bylaw Number)

Kate Emmings, Manager

(Title)

(Signature)

Islands Trust Conservancy

(Agency)

(Date)



## REQUEST FOR DECISION

**To:** ITC Board **For the Meeting of:** January 26, 2021  
**From:** Staff **Date Prepared:** January 20, 2021

**SUBJECT: Project Charter – Species at Risk Program**

---

**RECOMMENDATION:** that the Islands Trust Conservancy Board approve the Species at Risk Program Project Charter, dated January 26, 2021.

---

**1 PURPOSE:** To update the ITC Board regarding the status of the Species at Risk (SAR) Program and request approval of the SAR Program Project Charter

**2 BACKGROUND:** In September 2017, Trust Council passed the following resolution:

**TC-2017-029**

**It was moved and seconded,**

that Trust Council request that the [Islands Trust Conservancy] Board investigate options for increased use of federal or provincial stewardship agreements for species at risk in the Islands Trust Area.

Through ensuing discussions with Environment and Climate Change Canada (ECCC), the Islands Trust Conservancy (ITC) was awarded a grant of \$597,000, payable up until March 31, 2023 to initiate a SAR Program in the Islands Trust Area. The ITC Board was informed of the financial contribution in August. At its October 6, 2020 meeting, the ITC Board passed the following resolution:

**ITC-2020-024**

**It was moved and seconded,**

that the Islands Trust Conservancy Board direct staff to sign a contribution agreement for \$597,000 with Environment and Climate Change Canada for a Species at Risk Program that will last until March 31, 2023 and will include the following work:

- Conduct surveys and monitoring
- Restore critical habitat
- Provide outreach materials and events
- Assist with costs associated with land securement
- Engage and work with First Nations

Staff worked with ECCC and a Contribution Agreement for the grant funding was signed on October 20, 2020 by the Islands Trust Chief Administrative Officer, as required by Islands Trust policy.

At its October meeting, the ITC Board also approved an ITC budget for 2021/22 which would include additions to the ITC Budget to accommodate the SAR Program, including the addition of a SAR Program Coordinator and a Summer Co-op Student position to ITC staffing. The Job Description for the SAR Program Coordinator was submitted to the Public Service Agency for classification on January 4, 2021. Staff are now working on program delivery and are providing a SAR Program Project Charter for approval to the ITC Board.

### 3 IMPLICATIONS OF RECOMMENDATION

**ORGANIZATIONAL:** The addition of the SAR Program is a significant addition to the ITC work program and requires increased capacity as well as a revision to existing staff work programs. A SAR Program Coordinator will be hired to coordinate the program and a Summer Co-op Student will assist with additional property management needs. There is also funding available for additional support for project start up and evaluation.

**FINANCIAL:** The SAR Program will increase the ITC Budget by \$597,000 over the current and next two fiscal years (see attached budget). Required matching funds will come from existing ITC budgets and will total approximately \$957,120 over the three year program. The total SAR Program Budget will be approximately \$1,555,120 over three years.

This influx of funding will increase the impact of the ITC and the ability to carry out the goals and objectives of the Regional Conservation Plan. Staff have set up accounting procedures to assist with financial reporting.

**POLICY:** None. The SAR Program is consistent with goals and objectives of the Regional Conservation Plan.

**IMPLEMENTATION/COMMUNICATIONS:** Staff have issued a news release in collaboration with ECCC and have provided background information to Trust Council. Staff will continue work to deliver the SAR Program described in the SAR Program Project Charter.

**FIRST NATIONS:** No First Nations engagement has occurred for this project to date. The SAR Program includes funding to engage and work with First Nations and staff hope to initiate conversations soon.

**CLIMATE CHANGE:** The SAR Program will result in additional funding for land conservation, which will also provide for increased carbon sequestration and storage. Management activities on ITC lands will also contemplate climate change mitigation and adaptation strategies.

**OTHER:** As part of the SAR Program, staff are continuing negotiations with the University of British Columbia, Martin Conservation Decisions Lab, on a Memorandum of Understanding to facilitate data sharing and analysis. This work will likely include Species at Risk data sharing, management, analysis and modelling.

- 4 **RELEVANT POLICY(S):** [ITC Policy 2.1: Board Approval of Projects and Transactions](#)  
[ITC Regional Conservation Plan](#)

- 5 **ATTACHMENT(S):**
- SAR Program Project Charter
  - SAR Program Budget
  - SAR Program Action Plan (from Contribution Agreement)

---

### **RESPONSE OPTIONS**

**Recommendation:** that the Islands Trust Conservancy Board approve the Species at Risk Program Project Charter, dated January 26, 2021.

**Alternative:** that the Islands Trust Conservancy Board approve the Species at Risk Program Project Charter, dated January 26, 2021, with the following amendments:

*[insert amendments]*

---

**Prepared By:** Kate Emmings, A/ Manager

# Species at Risk Program - Charter

Islands Trust Conservancy

**DRAFT**

Date: Jan. 26, 2021

**Purpose** To implement a Species at Risk program for the Islands Trust Conservancy that contributes to the recovery of species at risk and the conservation of wildlife and habitat in the Islands Trust Area.

**Background** In June 2017 Environment and Climate Change Canada (ECCC) presented to Trust Council regarding the *Species at Risk Act* (SARA) and local government responsibilities in the Islands Trust Area (ITA). ECCC Staff described federal government responsibilities on private and public lands under SARA. Trust Council requested that the Islands Trust Conservancy (ITC) investigate options for increased use of federal or provincial stewardship agreements for species at risk in the ITA. Through discussions with ECCC, in July 2020, the Islands Trust Conservancy (ITC) was awarded a grant of \$597,000, payable up until March 31, 2023, through the Canada Nature Fund, Species at Risk Stream for Priority Places, to implement a Species at Risk (SAR) Program in the ITA.

## Objectives

- Create framework within ITC to deliver SAR Program
- Coordinate the compilation & analysis of SAR data for the ITA
- Inventory, monitor & manage SAR & SAR habitat in ITC protected areas
- Deliver SAR outreach to landowners & Islands Trust staff and officials
- Develop relationships with First Nations for more effective SAR Program delivery
- Increase land securement with a focus on SAR protection & recovery

## In Scope

- Additions to ITC staffing
- SAR data consolidation & analysis
- SAR monitoring & inventory in ITC protected areas
- SAR management on ITC protected areas
- Outreach to Islands Trust elected officials & staff
- Focussed SAR outreach
- Land securement costs
- First Nations Engagement

## Out of Scope

- Work on lands where ITC has no legal interest
- General outreach programs about SAR
- Funding for direct land acquisition (i.e., land cost)

## Workplan Overview

| Deliverable/Milestone          | Date                         |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Program initiation             | July 22, 2020                |
| Program Implementation         | August 2020—February 2023    |
| Hire SAR Program Coordinator   | March 31, 2021               |
| Program Planning               | June 30, 2021                |
| Mid-program evaluation         | December 2021 / January 2022 |
| Project Wrap Up and Evaluation | March 31, 2023               |

## Project Team

|                                                                 |                                |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| ITC Manager                                                     | Project Champion               |
| SAR Program Coordinator                                         | Project Manager                |
| Property Management Specialist / Covenant Management Specialist | Property Management Leads      |
| Ecosystem Protection Specialist                                 | Land Securement Lead           |
| Communications Specialist / Outreach Specialist                 | Outreach/ Communications Leads |
| Admin. Services (Islands Trust)                                 | Mapping & Admin .              |

### Approved by:

ITC Board

### Endorsement:

Resolution #:

**Date:** Jan 26, 2021

## Budget

| Sources: ECCC (\$597,000) & ITC (\$958,120)   |                    |
|-----------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| Item                                          | Cost               |
| Salaries                                      | \$864,448          |
| Property Management                           | \$103,468          |
| Land Securement                               | \$106,705          |
| Species Inventories and Mapping               | \$187,788          |
| Outreach/Communications/First Nations Liaison | \$69,900           |
| Admin./Equipment/Travel/Other                 | 222,811            |
| <b>Total</b>                                  | <b>\$1,555,120</b> |

## Total Project Costs

| Cost Detail                                                                                    | Cost Category                                              | Year 1 (2020-2021) | Year 2 (2021-2022) | Year 3 (2022-2023) | Total            |                  | GRAND TOTAL        |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|------------------|------------------|--------------------|
|                                                                                                |                                                            | Cash               | Cash               | Cash               | ECCC             | ITC              |                    |
| ITC Salaries - all staff including added positions of SAR Coordinator and summer Co-op Student | Salaries and Wages                                         | \$185,458          | \$331,212          | \$347,778          | \$393,127        | \$471,321        | \$864,448          |
| Contracted biologist(s) for species survey and inventory, \$600/day                            | Contractors                                                | \$9,000            | \$25,000           | \$25,000           | \$29,000         | \$30,000         | \$59,000           |
| Contracted First Nations Liaison/Advisor \$600/day                                             | Contractors                                                | \$21,600           | \$20,000           | \$20,000           | \$25,000         | \$36,600         | \$61,600           |
| Production and distribution of outreach materials                                              | Communication, production, distribution and printing costs | \$2,000            | \$3,150            | \$3,150            | \$1,800          | \$6,500          | \$8,300            |
| Proper appraisals, surveys, legal fees, etc.                                                   | Management and professional service expenditures           | \$30,705           | \$38,000           | \$38,000           | \$41,200         | \$65,505         | \$106,705          |
| Administrative support - Human resources, IT Support and Finance                               | Overhead                                                   | \$37,447           | \$67,782           | \$67,782           | \$0              | \$173,011        | \$173,011          |
| Site Visits by ITC Staff                                                                       | Travel                                                     | \$3,000            | \$10,000           | \$10,000           | \$10,500         | \$12,500         | \$23,000           |
| Restoration - Plants, fencing, equipments                                                      | Material and supplies                                      | \$5,840            | \$5,000            | \$5,000            | \$15,840         | \$0              | \$15,840           |
| Equipment Purchase (laptop, iPad, office equipment, cel phone, etc.)                           | Purchase of capital assets                                 | \$4,000            | \$650              | \$650              | \$3,800          | \$1,500          | \$5,300            |
| Mapping work                                                                                   | Contractors                                                | \$20,000           | \$20,000           | \$20,000           | \$15,000         | \$45,000         | \$60,000           |
| Administrative support - ITC Mapping Department                                                | Overhead                                                   | \$14,562           | \$27,113           | \$27,113           | \$0              | \$68,788         | \$68,788           |
| Facilitation - Project Start Up, \$500/day                                                     | Contractors                                                | \$15,000           | \$0                | \$0                | \$9,000          | \$6,000          | \$15,000           |
| Training and Conferences                                                                       | Overhead                                                   | \$0                | \$750              | \$750              | \$0              | \$1,500          | \$1,500            |
| SAR Monitoring                                                                                 | Contractors                                                | \$10,320           | \$9,500            | \$9,500            | \$17,170         | \$12,150         | \$29,320           |
| SAR Habitat Restoration - Invasive Species removal                                             | Contractors                                                | \$9,235            | \$11,000           | \$11,000           | \$20,235         | \$11,000         | \$31,235           |
| SAR Habitat Restoration - Biologist fees                                                       | Contractors                                                | \$4,653            | \$5,000            | \$5,000            | \$12,028         | \$2,625          | \$14,653           |
| SAR Habitat Restoration - Labour                                                               | Contractors                                                | \$2,420            | \$5,000            | \$5,000            | \$800            | \$11,620         | \$12,420           |
| Facilitation - Program Evaluation, \$500/day                                                   | Contractors                                                | \$0                | \$0                | \$5,000            | \$2,500          | \$2,500          | \$5,000            |
| <b>Total</b>                                                                                   |                                                            | <b>\$375,240</b>   | <b>\$579,157</b>   | <b>\$600,723</b>   | <b>\$597,000</b> | <b>\$958,120</b> | <b>\$1,555,120</b> |



## Appendix E: Key Project Activities

| Strategy #1: Program start-up and administration                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                       |                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                           |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Description:</b> Establish administrative and governance frameworks and processes to manage and deliver the project. Includes determining roles and responsibilities for existing staff; hiring additional capacity as needed (staff or contracted); developing detailed workplans and budgets; establishment of an advisory group; and annual reporting to ECCC. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                       |                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                           |
| Primary Threat(s) addressed: N/A                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Conservation Target(s) addressed: N/A |                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                           |
| Action #                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Action Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Start/End Date                        | Action Type                                                     | Reporting requirements                                                                                                                                    |
| 1.1                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Year 1: Develop program workplans and budgets, as well as metrics for program evaluation. Set up financial management system and program tracking system for reporting purposes. Includes annual reporting to ECCC.                                                               | 22 July 2020 - 31 Dec 2020            | 10.1.1 Project level administration and delivery                | Description of the action; annual report on activities and project finances provided to ECCC                                                              |
| 1.2                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Year 1: Secure required resources to manage and deliver the program, including hiring of a project coordinator, securing contractors to facilitate early engagement, and establishment of data management systems for both species information and landowner contact information. | 7 Oct 2020 - 31 Mar 2021              | 10.2.4 Providing financial support for hiring workers/employees | Role of employee supported; # positions & duration of employment                                                                                          |
| 1.3                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Year 1: Assemble a Species at Risk advisory group for the Islands Trust Area, including biologists, representatives of island conservation organizations, parks agencies, relevant government agencies and other expertise.                                                       | 7 Oct 2020 - 31 Mar 2021              | 10.2.2 Organizational establishment & development               | Description of type of service provided & quantity of support provided (e.g. composition & size of advisory group, brief description of role, # meetings) |
| 1.4                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Year 2: Coordination and delivery of the overall project in year 2, via mechanisms established in Year 1. Includes annual reporting to ECCC.                                                                                                                                      | 1 Apr 2021 - 31 Mar 2022              | 10.1.1 Project level administration and delivery                | Description of the action; annual report on activities and project finances provided to ECCC                                                              |
| 1.5                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Year 3: Coordination and delivery of the overall project in year 3, via mechanisms established in Year 1. Includes final reporting to ECCC.                                                                                                                                       | 1 Apr 2022 - 31 Mar 2023              | 10.1.1 Project level administration and delivery                | Description of the action; final report on activities and project finances provided to ECCC                                                               |

| Strategy #2: Coordination and analysis of existing species at risk information for the Islands Trust Area                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                              |                              |                                                                                                                                                                                |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Description:</b> Ensure that the ITC has updated information on SAR (e.g. publically-available occurrence data) from relevant sources such as the BC Conservation Data Centre, Environment and Climate Change Canada, Parks Canada and Fisheries and Oceans Canada. Determine which local, regional, provincial and national agencies maintain species at risk datasets and arrange for data sharing where possible. Develop and implement a system for data maintenance and data updates within the Islands Trust Information Systems department. Determine feasibility of using data for analysis and modelling of the Islands Trust landscape and implement preliminary analyses and modelling if possible. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                              |                              |                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Primary Threat(s) addressed:</b> N/A                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | <b>Conservation Target(s) addressed:</b> N/A |                              |                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Action #                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Action Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Start/End Date                               | Action Type                  | Reporting requirements                                                                                                                                                         |
| 2.1                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Year 1: Identify potential sources of SAR data. Arrange for data sharing (including data sharing agreements between data sources and ITC) where possible. Obtain copies of SAR data. Begin developments of data management and data update system for SAR data within the Islands Trust area.                                                                                                                                                                    | 14 Sep 2020 - 31 Mar 2021                    | 10.3.4 Knowledge sharing     | Partners involved<br>Type of knowledge shared<br>Importance of sharing<br>(E.g. summary of data shared with ITC and sources)                                                   |
| 2.2                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Year 1: Negotiate and finalize a Memorandum of Understanding with the Martin Conservation Decisions Lab at the University of British Columbia.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | 22 Jul 2020 - 31 Dec 2020                    | 10.3.1 Forming relationships | Description of working relationship developed (E.g. copy or overview of MoU)                                                                                                   |
| 2.3                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Year 2: Continue to liaise with potential SAR data sources to obtain additional/new SAR data for the Islands Trust area, including new or updated data sharing agreements (between data holders and ITC). Complete development of SAR data management system. Update as new data becomes available. Analyse and develop models using data available, if suitable. Determine appropriate mechanisms for SAR data sharing between ITC and ECCC and other agencies. | 1 Apr 2021 - 31 Mar 2022                     | 10.3.4 Knowledge sharing     | Partners involved<br>Type of knowledge shared<br>Importance of sharing<br>(E.g. summary of data shared with ITC and sources; method determined for sharing SAR data with ECCC) |
| 2.4                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Year 3: Continue to liaise with potential SAR data sources to obtain additional/new SAR data for the Islands Trust area, including new or updated data sharing agreements (between data holders and ITC). Update SAR data management system as data becomes available. Analyse and develop models using data available, if suitable.                                                                                                                             | 1 Apr 2022 - 31 Mar 2023                     | 10.3.4 Knowledge sharing     | Partners involved<br>Type of knowledge shared<br>Importance of sharing<br>(E.g. summary of data shared with ITC and sources)                                                   |
| 2.5                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Year 3: Share collated SAR data with ECCC where mechanisms have been established and data is public or agreements are in place with original data holders.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | 1 Oct 2022 - 31 Mar 2023                     | 10.3.4 Knowledge sharing     | Partners involved<br>Type of knowledge shared<br>Importance of sharing<br>(E.g. summary of data shared with ECCC and sources)                                                  |

| Strategy #3: Inventory, monitoring and management of Species at Risk on ITC properties                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                             |                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Description:</b> Develop and implement an overarching Species at Risk monitoring plan for ITC-owned and managed lands. Expand SAR inventory and survey activities beyond the current 7 protected areas and 12 species monitored to encompass additional properties and SAR species. Locations will be prioritized amongst the 56 properties known to have SAR occurrences and 39 properties with potential for SAR. Incorporate SAR data into management plans for individual properties. Where needs and opportunities are known (or discovered), begin implementation of habitat management actions to benefit SAR. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                             |                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>Primary Threat(s) addressed:</b><br>TBD - based on property specifics where habitat management actions occur                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | <b>Conservation Target(s) addressed:</b><br>Existing ITC conservation lands |                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Action #                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Action Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Start/End Date                                                              | Action Type                                             | Reporting requirements                                                                                                                                                                              |
| 3.1                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Year 1: Create a strategy for conducting species at risk surveys on lands owned and managed by the ITC, including mechanisms for data storage and analysis, and required updates to ITC policy and procedure. Conduct winter species at risk surveys on ITC lands. | 1 Dec 2020 - 31 Mar 2021                                                    | 6.4.1 Area based plan                                   | New or updated plan?<br>Planning elements included<br>Area the plan covers (Ha)<br>Status of plan<br>Implementation status of plan                                                                  |
| 3.2                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Year 1: Identify SAR expertise gaps within ITC. Identify methods to build internal capacity and/or identify and secure relevant contract biologists for survey and inventory activities.                                                                           | 1 Dec 2020 - 31 Mar 2021                                                    | 10.1.1 Project level administration and delivery        | Description of the action                                                                                                                                                                           |
| 3.3                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Year 2: Begin implementation of new SAR monitoring strategy.                                                                                                                                                                                                       | 1 Apr 2021 - 31 Oct 2021                                                    | 8.1.1 Field Research/Monitoring                         | Research theme<br>Research method<br>Study species (if applicable)<br>Status of study<br>Summary of findings                                                                                        |
| 3.4                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Year 2: Develop a program for management of Species at Risk on ITC Properties, including budgets, work plans and reporting mechanisms for Recovery Groups and ECCC.                                                                                                | 1 Oct 2021 - 31 Mar 2022                                                    | 6.4.1 Area based plan                                   | New or updated plan?<br>Planning elements included<br>Area the plan covers (Ha)<br>Status of plan<br>Implementation status of plan                                                                  |
| 3.5                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Year 2: Where needs and opportunities are known, begin implementing habitat management activities on ITC conservation properties for the benefit of SAR. Details of locations, types of activities, and SAR to benefit to be determined in Year 1.                 | 1 Apr 2021 - 31 Mar 2022                                                    | TBD based on specifics of habitat management undertaken | TBD based on the specifics of the action undertaken. Will include: shapefile of area where works undertaken; #ha over which action applied; description of type of action and expected SAR benefits |

| 3.6                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Year 3: Continue implementation of SAR monitoring strategy.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | 1 Apr 2022 - 31 Oct 2022                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 8.1.1 Field Research/Monitoring                                                                                    | Research theme<br>Research method<br>Study species (if applicable)<br>Status of study<br>Summary of findings                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3.7                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Year 3: Continue implementing habitat management activities on ITC conservation properties for the benefit of SAR. Details of locations, types of activities, and SAR to benefit to be determined in Year 1 and 2.                                                                                      | 1 Apr 2022 - 31 Mar 2023                                                                                                                                                                                                        | TBD based on specifics of habitat management undertaken                                                            | TBD based on the specifics of the action undertaken. Will include: shapefile of area where works undertaken; #ha over which action applied; description of type of action and expected SAR benefits                                                                          |
| <b>Strategy #4: Engagement and Outreach</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>Description:</b> Develop an engagement plan for local First Nations. Conduct outreach programs with landowners (focussing on landowners with SAR habitat or potential SAR habitat on their land), First Nations, relevant ENGO staff, local government staff, and elected officials to raise awareness of SAR and encourage incorporation of SAR needs into organization and private landowner activities. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>Primary Threat(s) addressed:</b><br>TBD - based on threats identified and targets developed within outreach plans                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | <b>Conservation Target(s) addressed:</b><br>Mature & old-growth coastal Douglas-fir forest; Garry Oak ecosystems; riparian & wetlands; coastal bluffs & rocky outcrops; terrestrial herbaceous ecosystems; shoreline ecosystems |                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Action #                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Action Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Start/End Date                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Action Type                                                                                                        | Reporting requirements                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 4.1                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Year 1: Landowner Outreach: Develop landowner contact plan, including identification of focus properties and landowners (e.g. overlap with sensitive features, known SAR occurrence, etc); identification of outreach materials; and preparation of information sessions/webinars with species experts. | 1 Dec 2020 - 31 Mar 2021                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 6.4.4 Operational plan                                                                                             | New or updated plan?<br>Planning elements included<br>Status of plan<br>Implementation status of plan                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 4.2                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Year 1: Begin delivery of landowner outreach                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 1 Apr 2020 - 31 Aug 2020                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 3.1.1 Marketing AND/OR<br>3.1.3 Person-to-person engagement (depending on specific outreach activities undertaken) | TBD based on the specifics of the action undertaken. Will include: Target audience; outreach method (social media, website, direct mail, on-site meeting, etc); materials developed; # individuals reached (approximate); # of engagement events/# individuals engaged, etc. |

|     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                          |                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-----|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4.3 | Year 1: Develop internal outreach and education programming in collaboration with the Islands Trust for Islands Trust staff and elected officials. Initiate a partnership with Bowen Island Municipality regarding species at risk outreach and education with Bowen Island Municipal staff and elected officials | 1 Apr 2020 - 31 Aug 2020 | 6.4.4 Operational plan                                                                                             | New or updated plan?<br>Planning elements included<br>Status of plan<br>Implementation status of plan                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 4.4 | Year 1: Develop a plan to engage First Nations, in collaboration with ECCC staff. Includes development of appropriate budgets and identification of required internal resources.                                                                                                                                  | 1 Dec 2020 - 31 Mar 2021 | 6.4.4 Operational plan                                                                                             | New or updated plan?<br>Planning elements included<br>Status of plan<br>Implementation status of plan                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 4.5 | Year 2: Continue to implement landowner outreach, as per plan developed in year 1.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 1 Apr 2021 - 31 Mar 2022 | 3.1.1 Marketing AND/OR<br>3.1.3 Person-to-person engagement (depending on specific outreach activities undertaken) | TBD based on the specifics of the action undertaken. Will include: Target audience; outreach method (social media, website, direct mail, on-site meeting, etc); materials developed; # individuals reached (approximate); # of engagement events/# individuals engaged, etc. |
| 4.6 | Year 2: Continue to implement local government staff and elected official outreach, as per plan developed in year 1.                                                                                                                                                                                              | 1 Apr 2021 - 31 Mar 2022 | 3.1.1 Marketing AND/OR<br>3.1.3 Person-to-person engagement (depending on specific outreach activities undertaken) | TBD based on the specifics of the action undertaken. Will include: Target audience; outreach method (social media, website, direct mail, on-site meeting, etc); materials developed; # individuals reached (approximate); # of engagement events/# individuals engaged, etc. |
| 4.7 | Year 2: Begin implementation of First Nations engagement plan                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | 1 Apr 2021 - 31 Mar 2022 | TBD based on specifics of how engagement occurs                                                                    | TBD based on specifics of how engagement occurs                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| 4.8 | Year 3: Continue landowner outreach, as per plan developed in year 1.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | 1 Apr 2022 - 31 Mar 2023 | 3.1.1 Marketing AND/OR<br>3.1.3 Person-to-person engagement (depending on specific outreach activities undertaken) | TBD based on the specifics of the action undertaken. Will include: Target audience; outreach method (social media, website, direct mail, on-site meeting, etc); materials developed; # individuals reached (approximate); # of engagement events/# individuals engaged, etc. |
| 4.9 | Year 3: Continue local government staff and elected official outreach, as per plan developed in year 1.                                                                                                                                                                                                           | 1 Apr 2022 - 31 Mar 2023 | 3.1.1 Marketing AND/OR<br>3.1.3 Person-to-person engagement (depending on specific outreach activities undertaken) | TBD based on the specifics of the action undertaken. Will include: Target audience; outreach method (social media, website, direct mail, on-site meeting, etc); materials developed; # individuals reached                                                                   |

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                   | (approximate); # of engagement events/# individuals engaged, etc.                                                                                      |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4.1                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Year 3: Continue implementation of First Nations engagement plan.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | 1 Apr 2022 - 31 Mar 2023                                                                                                                                                                                                        | TBD based on specifics of how engagement occurs                                                                                                                   | TBD based on specifics of how engagement occurs                                                                                                        |
| <b>Strategy #5: Land Securement</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>Description:</b> Provide financial support to landowners for costs associated with donations of ecologically-valuable fee-simple lands or conservation covenants, as opportunities arise. Includes costs for biological surveys, archaeological and indigenous knowledge surveys, land appraisals, legal advice, land surveys and other needed expertise and reports as relevant. Does not include direct purchase costs. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>Primary Threat(s) addressed:</b><br>TBD - based on property specifics of resultant donated lands or conservation covenants                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | <b>Conservation Target(s) addressed:</b><br>Mature & old-growth coastal Douglas-fir forest; Garry Oak ecosystems; riparian & wetlands; coastal bluffs & rocky outcrops; terrestrial herbaceous ecosystems; shoreline ecosystems |                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                        |
| Action #                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Action Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Start/End Date                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Action Type                                                                                                                                                       | Reporting requirements                                                                                                                                 |
| 5.1                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Year 1: Acquire biological surveys, archaeological and indigenous knowledge surveys, land appraisals, legal advice, land surveys and other needed expertise and reports for land that is intended for securement through acquisition, conservation covenants or other mechanisms, as priority securement opportunities arise. | 22 Jul 2020 - 31 Mar 2021                                                                                                                                                                                                       | 6.1.2 Privately owned conservation lands OR<br>6.2.1 Conservation encumbrance (depending if eventual securement is fee-simple ownership or conservation covenant) | Securement method; status of securement; location of secured area and # ha; shapefile of area or PID of parcel                                         |
| 5.2                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Year 2: Conduct targeted outreach to landowners that have made securement inquiries in the past to identify opportunities to assist with non-purchase securement costs for ecologically-valuable private land with SAR values within the Islands Trust area.                                                                  | 4 Jan 2022 -31 Mar 2022                                                                                                                                                                                                         | 3.1.3 Person-to-person engagement                                                                                                                                 | Type of engagement<br>Target group/audience<br>Number of person-to-person engagement events<br>Number of individuals or entities engaged (approximate) |

|     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                          |                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                        |
|-----|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5.3 | Year 2: Acquire biological surveys, archaeological and indigenous knowledge surveys, land appraisals, legal advice, land surveys and other needed expertise and reports for land that is intended for securement through acquisition, conservation covenants or other mechanisms, for identified priority securement opportunities. | 1 Apr 2021 - 31 Mar 2022 | 6.1.2 Privately owned conservation lands OR<br>6.2.1 Conservation encumbrance (depending if eventual securement is fee-simple ownership or conservation covenant) | Securement method; status of securement; location of secured area and # ha; shapefile of area or PID of parcel                                         |
| 5.4 | Year 3: Conduct targeted outreach to landowners that have made securement inquiries in the past to identify opportunities to assist with non-purchase securement costs for ecologically-valuable private land with SAR values within the Islands Trust area.                                                                        | 3 Jan 2023 - 31 Mar 2023 | 3.1.3 Person-to-person engagement                                                                                                                                 | Type of engagement<br>Target group/audience<br>Number of person-to-person engagement events<br>Number of individuals or entities engaged (approximate) |
| 5.5 | Year 3: Acquire biological surveys, archaeological and indigenous knowledge surveys, land appraisals, legal advice, land surveys and other needed expertise and reports for land that is intended for securement through acquisition, conservation covenants or other mechanisms, for identified priority securement opportunities. | 1 Apr 2022 - 31 Mar 2023 | 6.1.2 Privately owned conservation lands OR<br>6.2.1 Conservation encumbrance (depending if eventual securement is fee-simple ownership or conservation covenant) | Securement method; status of securement; location of secured area and # ha; shapefile of area or PID of parcel                                         |



## REQUEST FOR DECISION

**To:** Islands Trust Conservancy Board      **For the Meeting of:** January 26, 2021  
**From:** Staff      **Date Prepared:** January 4, 2021

**SUBJECT:** Deep Ridge Nature Reserve Management Plan, Salt Spring Island

---

**RECOMMENDATION:** That the Islands Trust Conservancy Board approve the 2020 update of the Deep Ridge Nature Reserve Management Plan dated December 14, 2020.

---

### 1 PURPOSE:

To approve the revision of the management plan for Deep Ridge Nature Reserve.

### 2 BACKGROUND:

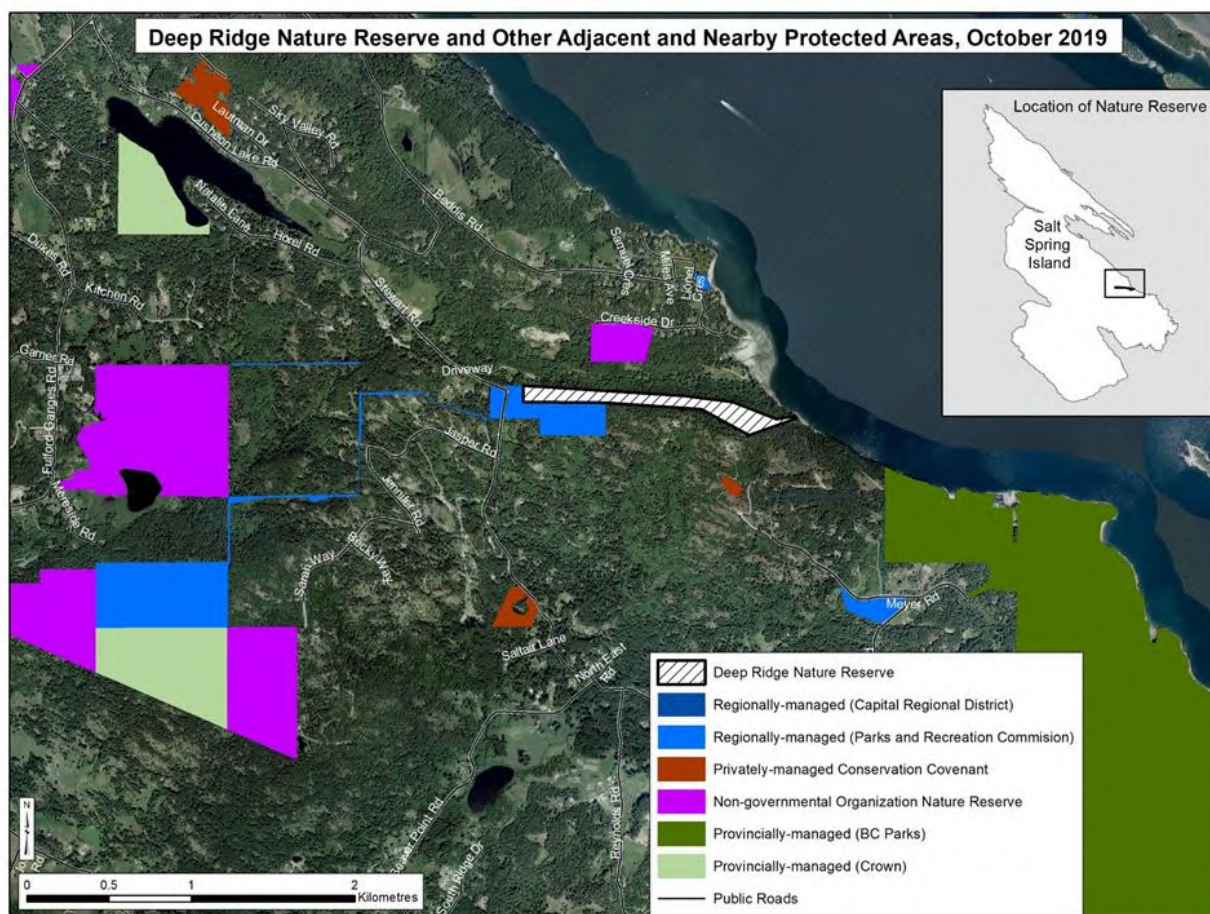
Islands Trust Conservancy Board policy (ITC 2.3) indicates, “The Board will prepare and approve a management plan for each property it acquires as a Nature Reserve...within one year of acquisition, and will update each management plan approximately every 10 years.” Islands Trust Conservancy management plans:

- Provide general and descriptive information on the property, including location, history, and land use;
- Set out the conservation goals and objectives for the property;
- Identify the property's ecological and/or cultural values and features;
- Describe the management issues associated with the property; and
- Provide short and long-term management recommendations (action items or tasks) on issues such as: invasive species management; species at risk protection; public access and safety; educational and research opportunities; and signage needs.

Deep Ridge Nature Reserve is a 14.2-hectare property located on the southeast coast of Salt Spring Island, south of Cusheon Creek. The land is a strip (measuring 1.6 kilometres long by 14-150 metres wide) of steeply-sloping, forested ridge that includes 14 metres of oceanfront. The Nature Reserve has been logged and is currently a young forest, which will mature into a red-listed ecological community. There are a number of wildlife trees, primarily small diameter standing dead trees and it provides a buffer to the adjacent regionally-managed Peter Arnell Park. Two species at risk have been observed on the land, leafless wintergreen and Northern Red-legged Frog (Table 2).

The Ministry of Transportation and Highways and the Capital Regional District hold a restrictive covenant on the land (EF170381) under Section 215 of The Land Title Act, which was executed on December 14, 1992. There is no Section 219 conservation covenant registered on the property.





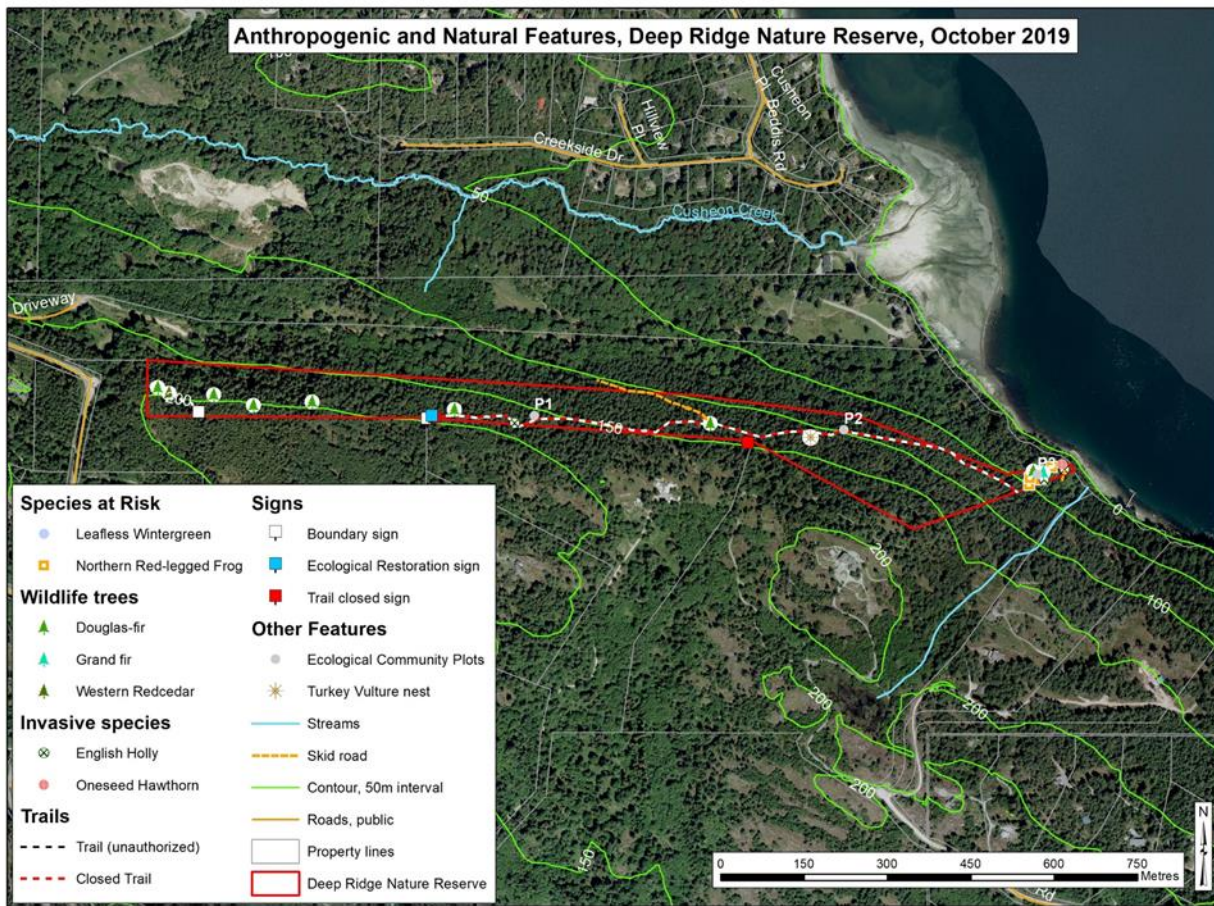
**Figure 1.** Location on Salt Spring Island (insert) of Deep Ridge Nature Reserve and protected areas context

**Table 1.** Rare Ecological Communities in Deep Ridge Nature Reserve and their status.

| Ecological Community Name       |                                                        | Status     |         |        |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|------------|---------|--------|
| English                         | Scientific                                             | Provincial | BC List | Global |
| Douglas-fir / Dull Oregon-grape | <i>Pseudotsuga menziesii</i> / <i>Berberis nervosa</i> | S1 (2018)  | Red     | G2     |

**Table 2.** Species at Risk in Deep Ridge Nature Reserve and their status.

| Species Name             |                       | Status     |         |           |             |        |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|------------|---------|-----------|-------------|--------|
| English                  | Scientific            | Provincial | BC List | COSEWIC   | SARA        | Global |
| Leafless wintergreen     | <i>Pyrola aphylla</i> | S3 (2019)  | Blue    | -         | -           | GNR    |
| Northern Red-legged Frog | <i>Rana aurora</i>    | S3 (2016)  | Blue    | SC (2015) | 1-SC (2005) | G4     |



**Figure 2.** Anthropogenic and Natural Features in Deep Ridge Nature Reserve.

The initial management plan was approved by the Islands Trust Conservancy Board in February 1994. The plan was revised in November 2004 by Joel Ussery. In 2019, the management plan was updated by Carrina Maslovat to be consistent with a new template and additional field work was required to complete the ecological descriptions of the property. There are no conservation partners to provide the management plan to for review.

Key management recommendations are to:

- restore unsanctioned trails,
- remove invasive species,
- install Islands Trust Conservancy boundary signage,
- develop a wildfire management plan, and
- engage with First Nations to develop a Management Plan for Areas of Cultural Heritage, gathering and harvesting species, and Sacred Significance.

Further inventories for species at risk would provide a clearer picture of the ecology of the Nature Reserve and guide future management.

ITC will continue to incorporate new information and knowledge sharing of First Nations interests, species-at-risk, invasive species, and management techniques over the course of the lifetime of the plan.

The management objectives for Deep Ridge Nature Reserve are to:

- Preserve and protect the natural ecosystems, biological diversity and natural values;
- Support ongoing inventory, mapping and monitoring to guide management;



- Allow natural forest succession and natural ecological processes and functions to proceed unimpeded without human intervention, except in the case of wildfire or other exceptional situations where remediation is considered imperative;
- Support and protect continued use of areas of sacred and cultural significance by First Nations as per Section 35 of the Constitution Act<sup>1</sup> and UNDRIP<sup>2</sup>;
- Remove invasive species throughout the Nature Reserve where they compromise natural values; and
- Allow for low impact use of the Nature Reserve for hiking, nature appreciation and similar activities provided it does not significantly impair the natural condition of the Nature Reserve.

**Immediate Actions proposed for the next 1-2 years:**

1. Support all partners, contractors and volunteers to complete cultural competency training in regard to reconciliation, knowledge and history of Coast Salish and Indigenous Peoples.
2. Engage with First Nations to ensure that the management plan is reflective of treaty, inherent rights, and the territories of each Nation.
3. Work in collaboration towards a Management Plan for Areas of Cultural Heritage, gathering and harvesting, and Sacred Significance with First Nations.
4. Continue to work with the Parks and Recreation Commission (PARC) to discourage the use of trails in the Nature Reserve.
5. Install a new post and signage at the western boundary of the Nature Reserve next to the well-used unauthorized trail close to the parking lot.
6. Install Islands Trust Conservancy boundary signage at access points from Peter Arnell Park to identify the area as a Nature Reserve and outline prohibited uses.
7. Remove multiple signs at closed trail locations and replace with a single boundary sign with Islands Trust Conservancy contact information indicating public access is not allowed.
8. Remove isolated non-native English holly from the Nature Reserve before it becomes established.

**Short Term Actions proposed for the next 3-5 years:**

1. Prepare a wildfire management plan that considers both forest ecology and prevention of damage to surrounding neighbourhoods in consultation with the local fire authorities.
2. Develop and implement a trail decommissioning and restoration plan for the unofficial trail at the western boundary of the Nature Reserve.

**Long Term Actions proposed for the next 5+ years:**

1. Conduct surveys for species at risk and other wildlife (e.g. birds, amphibians, bats) to provide a better understanding of the natural values of the Nature Reserve.
2. Monitor trail restoration work if implemented.

**Ongoing or Annual Actions proposed:**

1. Conduct annual monitoring to identify management concerns, including off-trail public use and invasive species.
2. Conduct ongoing maintenance of signs.
3. Continue to inform the general public of the natural values of the site and the permitted and prohibited uses through information placed in local publications.

### **3 IMPLICATIONS OF RECOMMENDATION**

**ORGANIZATIONAL:** This management plan will guide the management of this property and assist

<sup>1</sup> Section 35 of the Constitution Act, 1982 recognizes and affirms the inherent rights of Indigenous Peoples.

<sup>2</sup> The United Nations Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples (UNDRIP) is an international instrument adopted by the United Nations on September 13, 2007, to enshrine (according to Article 43) the rights that “constitute the minimum standards for the survival, dignity and well-being of the indigenous peoples of the world.” The UNDRIP protects collective rights that may not be addressed in other human rights charters that emphasize individual rights, and it also safeguards the individual rights of Indigenous people. Canada signed in 2010.

staff in budgeting property management funds over the next 10 years.

**FINANCIAL:** The property management budget is allocated each year depending on available funds and the work that is most needed, balanced between all ITC properties. The primary management costs for the Nature Reserve will be the continuation of invasive species removal and restoration along the closed trail. Resources will also be required to engage with First Nations toward cooperative management, conduct climate change research and coordinate species at risk surveys.

**POLICY:** Consistent with policy.

**IMPLEMENTATION/COMMUNICATIONS:** The management plan will be posted to the ITC website. ITC contractors working within the Nature Reserve will be provided with the management plan.

**FIRST NATIONS:** ITC staff sent letters to First Nations listed in the First Nations Consultative Areas Database for Salt Spring Island. There has been no response to date, but this management plan is intended to be a living document. ITC staff will work to engage and receive management input from the First Nations with traditional territory on Salt Spring Island at any time. ITC is just beginning engagement with First Nations in the Islands Trust area and is developing ways to obtain engagement funding. Over the 10-year timeframe of this revised management plan, ITC will work more closely with First Nations to build trust through in-person meetings and development of a Management Plan for Areas of Cultural Heritage and Sacred Significance.

**CLIMATE CHANGE:** The future impacts of climate change on the Deep Ridge Nature Reserve are unknown, although a summer drying trend and an increase in both frequency and intensity of storm events are predicted. More powerful storms may cause increasing erosion, especially in areas with exposed soil. The regular monitoring program recommended in the management plan will ensure timely attention to management concerns. Climate change may impact the distribution of ecosystems across the landscape, affecting vegetation patterns, hydrology, and may encourage the outbreaks of pests. Trends that may prevail in this region include upslope migration of tree lines and ecosystem boundaries, and increased fire frequency. Ongoing protection of Deep Ridge Nature Reserve will facilitate the south-to-north and low-to-high-elevation shifts in ecological communities that are predicted with climate change.

**OTHER:** None.

4 **RELEVANT POLICY(S):** [ITC 2.3 - Acquisition and Management of Land](#)

5 **ATTACHMENT(S):**

- Deep Ridge Nature Reserve Management Plan

---

## **RESPONSE OPTIONS**

**Recommendation:** That the Islands Trust Conservancy Board approve the 2020 update of the Deep Ridge Nature Reserve Management Plan dated December 14, 2020.

**Alternative:** That the Islands Trust Conservancy Board approve the Deep Ridge Nature Reserve Management Plan as amended.

---

**Prepared By:** Nuala Murphy, Property Management Specialist

**Reviewed By/Date:** Kate Emmings, Manager, Islands Trust Conservancy / January 18, 2021

[Type here]

**Deep Ridge Nature Reserve  
Property Management Plan  
Salt Spring Island, BC**



***Photo 1. Maturing second growth forest in Deep Ridge Nature Reserve, Salt Spring Island.***

Prepared for:  
Islands Trust Conservancy



Deep Ridge Nature Reserve Management Plan

Prepared: February 1994

Revised: November 2004 by J. Ussery

Revised: January 2020 by Carrina Maslovat

APPROVED BY  
Islands Trust Conservancy Board on **DATE**

## i. Executive Summary

Islands Trust Conservancy acknowledges and respects that Salt Spring Island is within the territory of Coast Salish Peoples, the Cowichan Tribes, Halalt First Nation, Lyackson First Nation, MÁLEXEL (Malahat) Nation, BOKEĆEN (Pauquachin) First Nation, Penelakut Tribe, SEMYOME (Semiahmoo) First Nation, Stz'uminus (Chemainus) First Nation, WJOŁŁP (Tsartlip) First Nation, SŦÁUTW (Tsawout) First Nation, Tsawwassen First Nation, WSIKEM (Tseycum) First Nation, Ts'uubaa-asatx (Lake Cowichan) First Nation. The historical relationship to the land, culture, and spirit of this place continues to this day. Islands Trust Conservancy is committed to honouring the rich history of Indigenous stewardship in the lands and waters of the Islands Trust Area and to building mutually respectful relationships between Indigenous and non-Indigenous partners in conservation. Therefore, this Management Plan for Deep Ridge Nature Reserve is a living document that will evolve as opportunities for knowledge sharing arise and understanding grows<sup>1</sup>.

The Deep Ridge Nature Reserve was donated to the Islands Trust Conservancy (ITC) in 1992 by Jonathon and Evelyn Oldroyd and Robert and Rosemary Trump. The Ministry of Transportation and Highways and the Capital Regional District hold a restrictive covenant on the land, which was executed in 1992. The initial management plan was prepared in 1994, revised in 2004 by Joel Ussery, and updated in 2019 by Carrina Maslovat.

The Reserve is located on the southeast coast of Salt Spring Island, south of Cusheon Creek. It is 14.18 hectares (35.05 acres) in size, measuring 1.6 kilometres long by 14-150 metres wide. The land is a strip of steeply-sloping, forested ridge that includes 14 metres of ocean front. The Reserve has been logged and is currently a young forest which will mature into a red-listed ecological community. There are a number of wildlife trees, primarily small diameter standing dead trees. Two species at risk have been observed on the land, leafless wintergreen and Northern Red-legged Frog.

The Reserve provides a buffer to the adjacent regionally-managed Peter Arnell Park and is an important protected area in the Coastal Douglas-fir moist maritime (CDFmm) subzone on Salt Spring Island. Key management recommendations are to restore unsanctioned trails, remove invasive species, install Islands Trust Conservancy boundary signage and develop a wildfire management plan. Further inventories for species at risk would provide a clearer picture of the ecology of the Reserve and guide future management.

---

<sup>1</sup> First Nations/reconciliation content written by Lisa Wilcox, Islands Trust

## ii. Tables and Lists

### Table of Contents

|                                                                        |           |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| <b>i. Executive Summary.....</b>                                       | <b>2</b>  |
| <b>ii. Tables and Lists.....</b>                                       | <b>3</b>  |
| <b>iii. Acknowledgements.....</b>                                      | <b>6</b>  |
| <b>1.0 Introduction.....</b>                                           | <b>7</b>  |
| 1.1 Islands Trust Conservancy.....                                     | 7         |
| 1.2 Purpose of Islands Trust Conservancy Management Plans.....         | 8         |
| 1.3 Scope of Islands Trust Conservancy Management Plans.....           | 8         |
| 1.4 Protected Area Purpose.....                                        | 9         |
| 1.5 Protected Area Objectives .....                                    | 9         |
| <b>2.0 Property Information .....</b>                                  | <b>9</b>  |
| 2.1 Location.....                                                      | 9         |
| 2.2 Legal description.....                                             | 10        |
| 2.3 Legal Access .....                                                 | 10        |
| 2.4 Landscape Context.....                                             | 10        |
| <b>2.5 Site History .....</b>                                          | <b>11</b> |
| <b>2.6 Anthropogenic Features .....</b>                                | <b>12</b> |
| 2.7 Undersurface Rights.....                                           | 14        |
| 2.8 Notations, Charges, Liens and Interests.....                       | 14        |
| 2.9 Local Planning Designations .....                                  | 15        |
| 2.10 Existing Public and Other Use .....                               | 15        |
| <b>3.0 Inventory by Ecological Community.....</b>                      | <b>16</b> |
| 3.1 Ecological Significance.....                                       | 16        |
| 3.2 Climate .....                                                      | 17        |
| 3.3 Geology and Physiology.....                                        | 18        |
| 3.4 Hydrology .....                                                    | 19        |
| 3.5 Soils.....                                                         | 19        |
| 3.6 Ecological Classifications.....                                    | 19        |
| 3.7 Ecological Communities and Site Series .....                       | 19        |
| Ecological Community 1. Douglas-fir / Dull Oregon-grape - Plot 1 ..... | 21        |
| Ecological Community 1. Douglas-fir / Dull Oregon-grape - Plot 2 ..... | 24        |

|                                                                                              |           |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| Ecological Community 1. Douglas-fir / Dull Oregon-grape - Plot 3 .....                       | 26        |
| 3.8 Wildlife Species.....                                                                    | 29        |
| 3.9 Expected Change Over Time.....                                                           | 30        |
| <b>4.0 Threats .....</b>                                                                     | <b>31</b> |
| 4.1 Expected Change to Threats Over Time .....                                               | 32        |
| <b>5.0 Community Engagement.....</b>                                                         | <b>32</b> |
| 5.1 Adjacent Landholders.....                                                                | 32        |
| 5.2 First Nations .....                                                                      | 32        |
| 5.3 Conservation Partners and Community Members .....                                        | 32        |
| 5.4 Engagement Results.....                                                                  | 33        |
| <b>6.0 Management Recommendations .....</b>                                                  | <b>33</b> |
| 6.1 Management Roles .....                                                                   | 33        |
| 6.2 Permitted and Prohibited Uses.....                                                       | 33        |
| 6.3 Proposed Monitoring Program .....                                                        | 34        |
| 6.4 Public Access .....                                                                      | 34        |
| 6.5 Signage .....                                                                            | 34        |
| 6.6 Trail Use, Maintenance and Development .....                                             | 36        |
| 6.7 Protection Initiatives for Sensitive Ecosystems and Species and Ecosystems at Risk ..... | 36        |
| 6.8 Ecological Restoration Options .....                                                     | 36        |
| 6.9 Scientific Research/Education Opportunities.....                                         | 37        |
| 6.10 Exotic and Invasive Species Management.....                                             | 37        |
| 6.11 Wildfire Risk Management .....                                                          | 37        |
| 6.12 Climate Change Impacts and Management .....                                             | 37        |
| <b>7.0 Action Items .....</b>                                                                | <b>38</b> |
| 7.1 Immediate Actions (1-2 years).....                                                       | 38        |
| 7.2 Short term Actions (3-5 years).....                                                      | 38        |
| 7.3 Long term Actions (5+ years).....                                                        | 38        |
| 7.4 Ongoing or Annual Action Items .....                                                     | 38        |
| <b>8.0 Conclusion .....</b>                                                                  | <b>39</b> |
| <b>9.0 References .....</b>                                                                  | <b>40</b> |
| <b>10.0 Appendices .....</b>                                                                 | <b>42</b> |



## List of Figures

|                                                                                                                                                                       |    |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Figure 1. Location on Salt Spring Island (inset), and protected areas context surrounding the Deep Ridge Nature Reserve. ....                                         | 11 |
| Figure 2. Anthropological and Natural Features in Deep Ridge Nature Reserve. ....                                                                                     | 14 |
| Figure 3. Canadian climate normals for temperature and precipitation at Cusheon Lake weather station, British Columbia from 1981-2018 (Environment Canada 2019). .... | 18 |

## List of Tables

|                                                                                                                                                         |    |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Table 1. The primary author and other contributors to the management plan, and their contributions, affiliations, and professional qualifications. .... | 6  |
| Table 2. Anthropogenic features in Deep Ridge Nature Reserve. ....                                                                                      | 13 |
| Table 3. Species at Risk in Deep Ridge Nature Reserve. ....                                                                                             | 17 |
| Table 4. Ecological Communities in Deep Ridge Nature Reserve. ....                                                                                      | 17 |
| Table 5. Description of Ecological Community 1- Plot 1. ....                                                                                            | 22 |
| Table 6. Vegetation Species in Ecological Community 1- Plot 1. ....                                                                                     | 23 |
| Table 7. Description of Ecological Community 1- Plot 2. ....                                                                                            | 24 |
| Table 8. Vegetation Species in Ecological Community 1- Plot 2. ....                                                                                     | 25 |
| Table 9. Description of Ecological Community 1- Plot 3. ....                                                                                            | 27 |
| Table 10. Vegetation Species in Ecological Community 1- Plot 3. ....                                                                                    | 28 |
| Table 11. Wildlife Species Observed in Deep Ridge Nature Reserve. ....                                                                                  | 30 |
| Table 12. Threats to Natural Values in Deep Ridge Nature Reserve. ....                                                                                  | 31 |

## List of Photos

All photos by L. Matthias except photo 6 which is by C. Maslovat

|                                                                                                                                                                                           |    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Photo 1. Maturing second growth forest in Deep Ridge Nature Reserve, Salt Spring Island. ....                                                                                             | 1  |
| Photo 2. Oceanfront shoreline of Deep Ridge Nature Reserve. Carrina is at the southeastern corner of the Reserve and the large tree in the foreground is at the northeastern corner. .... | 9  |
| Photo 3. "Trail Closed" and "Area Closed" signs along boundary of Deep Ridge Nature Reserve. ....                                                                                         | 12 |
| Photo 4. Old skid road with young trees growing on it. ....                                                                                                                               | 13 |
| Photo 5. Northern Red-legged Frog in Deep Ridge Nature Reserve. ....                                                                                                                      | 16 |
| Photo 6. Larger diameter blowdown next to unauthorized trail in Deep Ridge Nature Reserve. ....                                                                                           | 20 |
| Photo 7. Vegetation in Ecological Community 1, Plot 1, showing dense young Douglas-fir forest. ....                                                                                       | 21 |
| Photo 8. Vegetation in Ecological Community 1, Plot 1, showing abundant surface rock and steep slopes. ....                                                                               | 22 |
| Photo 9. Downslope in steeply sloping area in Plot 2 of Ecological Community 1. ....                                                                                                      | 24 |
| Photo 10. Larger diameter trees on level site close to the ocean in Plot 3, Ecological Community 1. ....                                                                                  | 26 |
| Photo 11. Mix of Douglas-fir and western redcedar young standing dead wildlife trees in Deep Ridge Nature Reserve. ....                                                                   | 29 |
| Photo 12. Turkey Vulture nest used earlier in the summer of 2019 as evidenced by downy feathers near entrance. No eggshells were found in the nest. ....                                  | 29 |

|                                                                                                |    |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Photo 13. Three Islands Trust Fund signs indicating the boundary and the closed trail. ....    | 35 |
| Photo 14. Well-worn trail and boundary sign less than 100 m east of Peter Arnell Parking lot.. | 35 |
| Photo 15. Trail closed sign showing regrowth of vegetation over trail.....                     | 36 |
| Photo 16. Seed capsules of leafless wintergreen in Deep Ridge Nature Reserve.....              | 36 |
| Photo 17. Small English holly plant in Deep Ridge Nature Reserve. ....                         | 37 |

## List of Appendices

|                                                                        |    |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Appendix A. Vegetation found in Deep Ridge Nature Reserve. ....        | 42 |
| Appendix B. Photographic Documentation. ....                           | 44 |
| Appendix C. Letter to Neighbours. ....                                 | 46 |
| Appendix D. Questionnaire sent to Neighbours and Available Online..... | 48 |
| Appendix E. Letter to First Nations. ....                              | 50 |

## iii. Acknowledgements

**Table 1. The primary author and other contributors to the management plan, and their contributions, affiliations, and professional qualifications.**

| Name             | Position/Affiliation                                            | Professional Accreditation or subject expertise | Contribution                                           |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| Carrina Maslovat | Botanist/Contractor                                             | R.P. Bio.                                       | Primary author, field data collection                  |
| Laura Matthias   | Species at Risk Biologist/Subcontractor                         |                                                 | Assistance with field data collection                  |
| Lisa Wilcox      | Senior Intergovernmental Policy Advisor                         | B.A. Psychology<br>Indigenous Knowledge Holder  | Reconciliation/Indigenous Knowledge Holder and editing |
| Jemma Green      | Acting Property Management Specialist/Islands Trust Conservancy |                                                 | Background information and mapping, local contacts     |
| Nuala Murphy     | Property Management Specialist/Islands Trust Conservancy        |                                                 | Background information, document review                |
| Joel Ussery      | Contractor                                                      |                                                 | Author of management plan revision 2004                |

## 1.0 Introduction

Salt Spring Island is situated within the territory of the Coast Salish Peoples, who share a rich history of stewardship in the lands and waters of the Islands Trust Area that inspires the work of Islands Trust Conservancy and its partners. Deep Ridge Nature Reserve was established by the Islands Trust Conservancy in March, 1992 thanks to a donation by Jonathon and Evelyn Oldroyd and Robert and Rosemary Trump.

The initial management plan was approved by the Islands Trust Conservancy Board in February 1994. The plan was revised in November 2004 by Joel Ussery and approved by the Islands Trust Conservancy Board on November 29<sup>th</sup>, 2004. In 2020, the management plan was updated to be consistent with a new template and additional field work was required to update the plan.

### 1.1 Islands Trust Conservancy

Since time immemorial, the lands and waters between Vancouver Island and mainland British Columbia have been home to the Coast Salish People, whose ecological, cultural, and spiritual connections to this place continue to this day. In 1974, the Province of British Columbia recognized the islands between Vancouver Island and the mainland as a special place within the province where the unique beauty, rural character and diverse ecosystems should be protected for future generations. Through the Islands Trust Act, the province established the Islands Trust, a local government, with the following mandate (known as the Object of the Islands Trust):

*To preserve and protect the trust area and its unique amenities and environment for the benefit of the residents of the trust area and of British Columbia generally, in cooperation with municipalities, regional districts, improvement districts, other persons and organizations and the government of British Columbia. (Islands Trust 2019b)*

In 1990, through the enactment of a section of the Islands Trust Act, the Islands Trust Conservancy (originally called the Islands Trust Fund) was established as a conservation land trust to assist in carrying out the “preserve and protect” mandate. Part 6 of the Islands Trust Act establishes the corporate status, responsibilities, and governance structure of the Islands Trust Conservancy. The Islands Trust Conservancy is one of sixteen corporate entities<sup>2</sup> charged to uphold the Object of the Islands Trust and since 1990 has protected over 1,300 hectares (3,220 acres) of land as nature reserves and conservation covenants.

The vision of the Islands Trust Conservancy is that the islands and waters of the Strait of Georgia and Howe Sound will be a vibrant tapestry of culture and ecology where humans live and work in harmony with the natural world. This special place will have a network of protected areas that preserve in perpetuity the native species and natural systems of the islands. Engaged residents and conservation partners will work together to protect large natural areas and key wildlife habitat. Viable ecosystems will flourish alongside healthy island communities.

---

<sup>2</sup> The corporate entities charged to uphold the Object of the Islands Trust are the Trust Council, the Executive Committee, twelve local trust committees, one island municipality and the Islands Trust Conservancy Board.

The mission of the Islands Trust Conservancy is to protect special places by encouraging, undertaking and assisting in voluntary conservation initiatives within the Islands Trust Area. Islands Trust Conservancy nature reserves are managed to maintain, preserve and protect the natural features and values of ecosystems.

### 1.2 Purpose of Islands Trust Conservancy Management Plans

ITC management plans provide background information and set out the direction of property management as follows:

- Provide general and descriptive information on the property, including location, history, and land use.
- Set out the conservation goals and objectives for the property.
- Identify the property's ecological and/or cultural values and features.
- Describe the management issues associated with the property.
- Provide short, medium and long-term management recommendations (action items or tasks) on issues such as: species at risk protection; ecological restoration; public access; educational and research opportunities; invasive species management; and signage needs.
- Preserve and protect cultural, spiritual, and sacred locations.

Once the management plan process is complete, the ITC will work to carry out the management actions or strategies identified in the plan, as resources allow. Following general practice, the ITC will revise the Management Plan every ten years.

### 1.3 Scope of Islands Trust Conservancy Management Plans

Consistent with the Islands Trust Reconciliation Declaration (Islands Trust 2019), ITC recognizes that nature reserves may be places of great cultural and spiritual significance to First Nations. Cooperative management of these protected places will provide opportunities to establish and maintain mutually respectful relationships between the Islands Trust Conservancy and First Nations, as well as upholding the guiding principles of United Nations Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples (UNDRIP)<sup>3</sup> and the Truth and Reconciliation (TRC) Calls to Action. Relationship-building, knowledge-sharing, healing, and establishment of trust takes time. Islands Trust Conservancy is committed to developing a parallel *Management Plan for Areas of Cultural Heritage and Sacred Significance*. This parallel Management Plan sets out guiding principles for cooperative collaboration between ITC and First Nations with traditional and treaty territories and cultural interests in the area defined by one or more nature reserves. Moreover, the Management Plan defines the common vision, objectives, policies, and best management practices for the nature reserve(s) to ensure that its natural values and cultural heritage and sacred significance are maintained for future generations.

---

<sup>3</sup> The United Nations Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples (UNDRIP) is an international instrument adopted by the United Nations on September 13, 2007, to enshrine (according to Article 43) the rights that “constitute the minimum standards for the survival, dignity and well-being of the indigenous peoples of the world.” The UNDRIP protects collective rights that may not be addressed in other human rights charters that emphasize individual rights, and it also safeguards the individual rights of Indigenous people. Canada signed in 2010.

## 1.4 Protected Area Purpose

The purpose of the Deep Ridge Nature Reserve is to preserve and protect the representative natural ecosystems and natural values of the site (including any rare and endangered plant and animal species), and to maintain the biodiversity of the site for the benefit of the flora and fauna of the Reserve, the residents of the island and the province generally. The site is to be protected in accordance with the objectives of the Islands Trust Conservancy and the mandate of the Islands Trust.

## 1.5 Protected Area Objectives

The objectives for Deep Ridge Nature Reserve are to:

- Preserve and protect the natural ecosystems, biological diversity and natural values;
- Support ongoing inventory, mapping and monitoring to guide management;
- Allow natural forest succession and natural ecological processes and functions to proceed unimpeded without human intervention, except in the case of wildfire or other exceptional situations where remediation is considered imperative;
- Support and protect continued use of areas of sacred and cultural significance by First Nations community members as per Section 35 of the Constitution Act<sup>4</sup> and UNDRIP;
- Remove invasive species throughout the Reserve where they compromise natural values; and
- Maintain a buffer for Peter Arnell Park thereby creating a larger contiguous protected area.

## 2.0 Property Information

The Deep Ridge Nature Reserve is a 14.18 hectare (35.05 acre) strip of forested ridge measuring 1.6 kilometres long by 14-150 metres wide. The property drops steeply just west of the oceanfront shoreline which is approximately 200 metres south of the mouth of Cusheon Creek. The Reserve includes 14 metres of ocean front.

### 2.1 Location

Deep Ridge Nature Reserve is located south of Cusheon Creek on the southeast coast of Salt Spring Island.



***Photo 2. Oceanfront shoreline of Deep Ridge Nature Reserve. Carrina is at the southeastern corner of the Reserve and the large tree in the foreground is at the northeastern corner.***

<sup>4</sup> Section 35 of the Constitution Act, 1982 recognizes and affirms the inherent rights of Indigenous Peoples.

Salt Spring Island can be accessed by ferries from Swartz Bay, Tsawassen and Crofton. From the Fulford Harbour ferry landing, follow Fulford-Ganges Road for 320 metres then turn right (north) onto Beaver Point Road. Turn left (northwest) after 2.5 kilometres onto Stewart Road. After approximately 2 kilometres, at the top of the hill, there is a sign on the left of the road for Peter Arnell Park and a parking area on the right side of the road for the park. Follow the main trail in Peter Arnell Park from the parking area to the east and keep to the left fork in the trail (to the north). The Reserve is approximately 95 metres from the parking lot along this trail.

## 2.2 Legal description

Deep Ridge Nature Reserve is legally described as PID: 018-031-552, Lot 3, Sections 75 and 76, South Salt Spring Island, Cowichan District, Plan VIP 55669.

## 2.3 Legal Access

A development variance permit (EF122838) has been granted under Part 29 (Management of Development) of *The Municipal Act* to exempt the property from requiring road frontage.

The Islands Trust Conservancy Board holds easement EF17032 over Lot 1, Plan 13496. The easement allows public access (foot traffic only) to the property through the regionally-managed Peter Arnell Park. There is a well-established trail that leads from Peter Arnell Park into the west portion of Deep Ridge Nature Reserve.

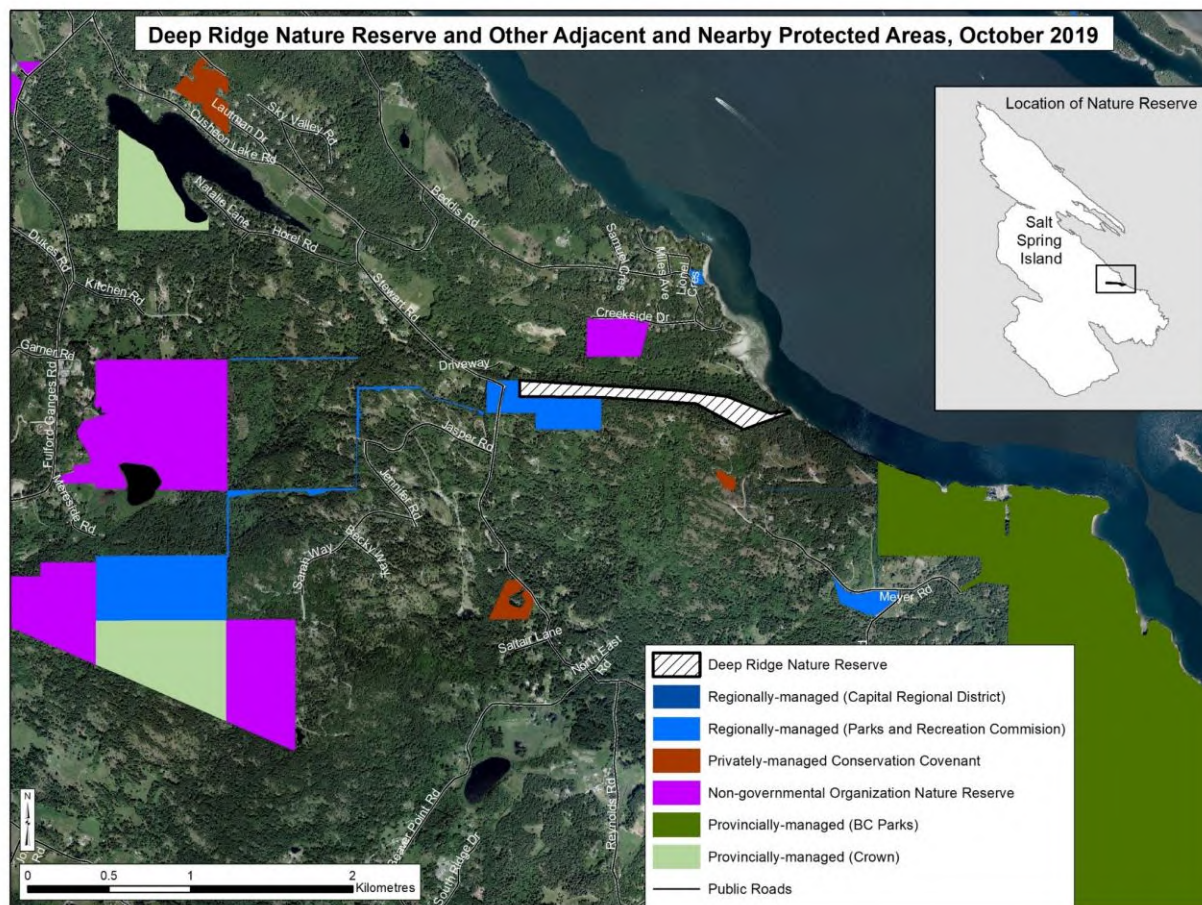
## 2.4 Landscape Context

Salt Spring Island is located in the Georgia Strait, one of the many islands governed by the Islands Trust (see map in Figure 1 for location and protected area context). Deep Ridge Nature Reserve is located on the southeast coast of Salt Spring Island, south of Cusheon Creek with views to Galiano Island and Active Pass.

In the western part of the Reserve, the regionally-managed 13 hectare (31 acre) Peter Arnell Park lies to the west and south of the property.

Except for Peter Arnell Park and the Bryant Hill – Peter Arnell linear connector trails, the rest of the properties close to the Reserve are privately-managed lots. Directly north of the Reserve is a privately-managed linear parcel that measures 19 hectares (48 acres). In the eastern part of the Reserve, to the south there are two large privately-managed lots measuring 29 hectares (72 acres) and 26 hectares (65 acres), the latter was logged prior to the 2004 management plan (Ussery 2004).





**Figure 1. Location on Salt Spring Island (inset), and protected areas context surrounding the Deep Ridge Nature Reserve.**

## 2.5 Site History

Salt Spring Island is within the treaty and territories of the Coast Salish People. The island has since time immemorial been the homeland and gathering place for First Peoples including the Cowichan Tribes, Halalt First Nation, Lyackson First Nation, MÁLEXEŁ (Malahat) Nation, BOŖEĆEN (Pauquachin) First Nation, Penelakut Tribe, SEMYOME (Semiahmoo) First Nation, Stz'uminus (Chemainus) First Nation, WJOLEŁP (Tsartlip) First Nation, SŖÁUTW (Tsawout) First Nation, Tsawwassen First Nation, WSIŖEM (Tseycum) First Nation, Ts'uubaa-asatx (Lake Cowichan) First Nation; this rich history and cultural heritage continues to this day.

The Coast Salish peoples maintained a vital, thriving, and sustainable connection to their territory and developed rich cultural, spiritual, and traditional ecological knowledge. However, cultural heritage and sacred sites of Salt Spring Island and the greater Islands Trust Area have been and continue to be negatively impacted by European settlement. Past archeological activities, vandalism, and land use have disturbed sites of cultural and spiritual importance. The land and the greater territory remains an embodiment of the stories, oral history, and culture of these First Nations. There are archaeological artifacts dating back thousands of years on Salt

Spring showing a rich history of First Nations. First Nations on Salt Spring Island had permanent village sites, utilizing the lands and waters since time immemorial.

Mr. Cusheon was the first European to settle in the area and he attempted to pre-empt 1000 acres from the government as an industrial center but was successful at receiving only 250 acres (Hatfield 2005). To the south of the Reserve in Cusheon Cove, was the site of Salt Spring Island's first major sawmill and a village was established there by the Bulman Lumber Company in 1905.

The Reserve has been logged repeatedly. There are large high cut stumps in the western portion of the property indicating some selective harvest of easily accessible trees in the late 1800's. Logging and/or fire occurred over much of the property approximately 60 years ago (Ussery 2004).

The original intent for Deep Ridge Nature Reserve was to provide a link in the Salt Spring Island trail network to connect Peter Arnell Park with Ruckle Provincial Park via a route along the shore to the south. However, the extreme steepness of the Reserve makes trail construction unpractical and undesirable. In 2009, the Island Trust Conservancy Board moved to not approve the creation of a hiking trail and stated the current unsanctioned trail should be closed and no further trail building be permitted in the Reserve (Torgrimson 2009). Some of the trails in the Reserve have since been closed and signage has been installed.

The first management plan for the Reserve was written in 1994 and it was revised in November 2004 by Joel Ussery.

## 2.6 Anthropogenic Features

The previous management plan describes a well head for a drilled well located near the west end of the northern boundary (Ussery 2004). This was not found during 2019 surveys.

There is a well-travelled, unsanctioned trail leading into Deep Ridge Nature Reserve from Peter Arnell Park at the western boundary of the Reserve and the boundary has been signed with a Parks and Recreation Commission (PARC)/Capital Regional District (CRD) boundary sign at both ends. At the western end, the signpost has fallen over although the sign is still there. There are two other infrequently used unsanctioned trails that have been signed at the southern boundary of the Reserve along the border with Peter Arnell Park. At one location, there are three Islands Trust Conservancy (ITC)



**Photo 3. "Trail Closed" and "Area Closed" signs along boundary of Deep Ridge Nature Reserve.**



signs (Boundary, “Closed Trail” and “Area Closed”) and at a second location there are two Islands Trust Conservancy signs (“Closed Trail” and “Area Closed”). There is also an old skid road which now has vegetation growing on it, although compaction is limiting regeneration.

At this time ITC has not undertaken archaeological reviews in cooperation with First Nations to complete Traditional Use Studies (TUS), or a Traditional Ecological Knowledge study (TEK), or worked with Cultural Knowledge Holders (CKH) on the Reserve. ITC will work with First Nations to understand the cultural significance of the area and the ecology.



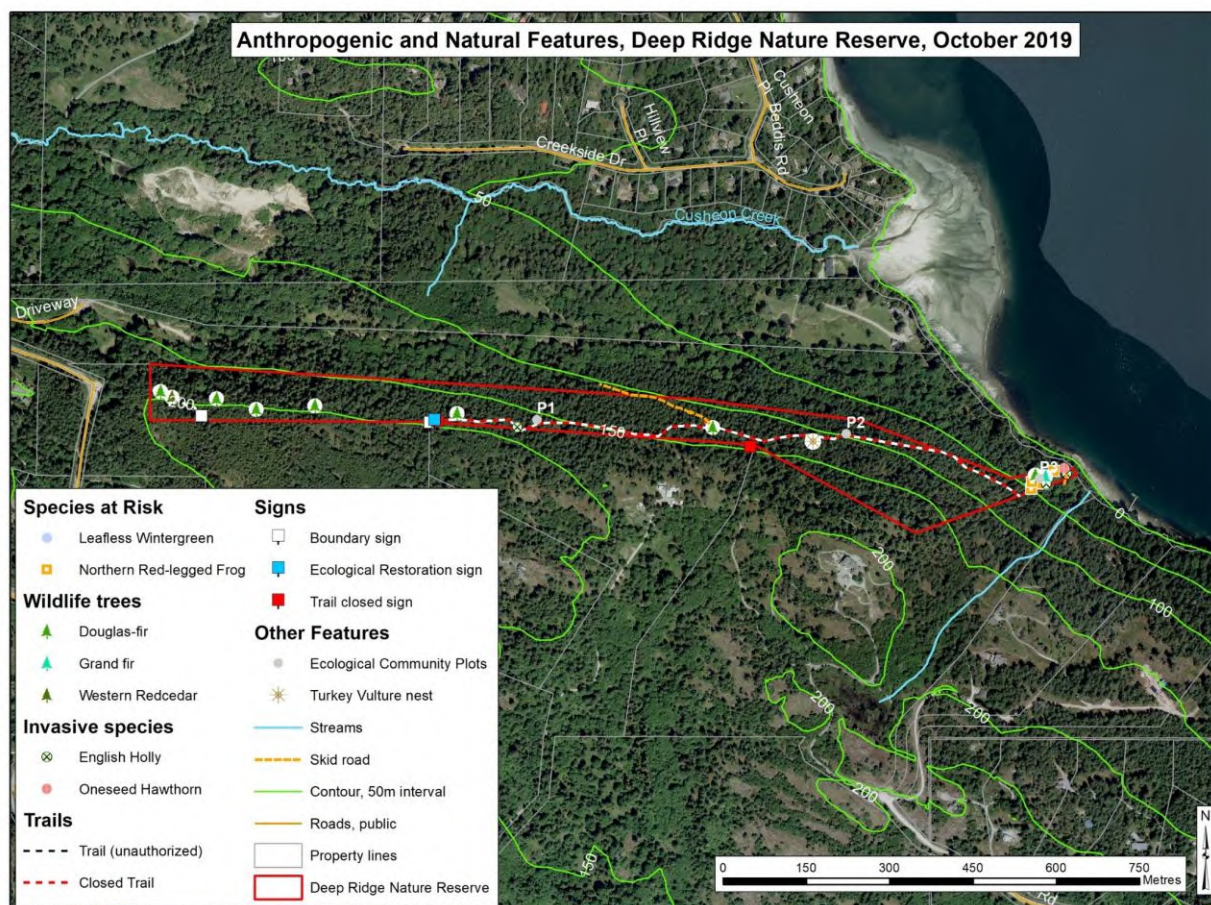
**Photo 4. Old skid road with young trees growing on it.**

The Archaeological Branch’s archaeological potential modelling indicates there are some small areas with high potential to contain unidentified archaeological deposits on the Reserve.

**Table 2. Anthropogenic features in Deep Ridge Nature Reserve.**

| Anthropogenic Feature | Description                                                                                                | Condition                                                              | Photopoint Location <sup>5</sup>   |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Trail                 | Well-worn trail in western part of Reserve from Peter Arnell Park                                          | Well-worn unsanctioned trail                                           | P13; Figure 2 467702; 5405644      |
| Boundary signs (3)    | PARC/CRD Boundary sign, ITC Closed Trail and Closed Area signs at property line next to unauthorized trail | Regenerating, good cover of native vegetation; Signs in fair condition | P12, P14; Figure 2 468122; 5405622 |
| Boundary signs (2)    | ITC Closed Trail and Closed Area signs at property line next to unauthorized trail                         | Used infrequently, some vegetation re-growth; Signs in fair condition  | P3; Figure 2 468695; 5405576       |
| Skid road             | Old logging skid road                                                                                      | Fair, regenerating but still compacted                                 | P4, Figure 2 468594; 5405638       |
| Boundary iron pin     | Boundary marker along northern boundary of Reserve                                                         | Good                                                                   | No photo 468118; 5405622           |
| Boundary iron pin     | Boundary marker along northern boundary of Reserve                                                         | Good                                                                   | No photo 468708; 5405582           |
| Boundary iron pin     | Boundary marker on northeastern corner of Reserve                                                          | Good                                                                   | No photo 469270 5405534            |
| Boundary iron pin     | Boundary marker on southeastern corner of Reserve                                                          | Good                                                                   | No photo 469273 5405527            |

<sup>5</sup> Locations of photos are shown on a map in Appendix B with features shown on map in Figure 2.



**Figure 2. Anthropological and Natural Features in Deep Ridge Nature Reserve.**

## 2.7 Undersurface Rights

Three undersurface rights charges appear on the title search as of October 2019 (200305G, EB3036, EC13825).

## 2.8 Notations, Charges, Liens and Interests

BC Hydro (EF93078) and BC Telephone Company (EF93079) hold statutory Right of Way over the property.

The Ministry of Transportation and Highways and the Capital Regional District hold a restrictive covenant on the land (EF170381) under Section 215 of *The Land Title Act*, which was executed on December 14, 1992.

The restrictive covenant outlines that the lot will be used as a park conservancy area for recreational or ecological purposes that do not disturb or interfere directly or indirectly with the soil, vegetation and/or fauna or habitat. It includes the following prohibitions:

- No placing of buildings, trailers or mobile structures on the lot
- No generating sewage or disposal use

- No further subdivision
- No cutting, harvesting or removal of trees or foliage except for the purpose of constructing a pedestrian trail network, which shall not include the right to trim, cut or remove for the improvement of the view<sup>6</sup>.
- No camping or lighting fires
- No use of motorized vehicles
- No improvements, docks or floats on the foreshore except construction of a staircase to the beach above the highwater mark
- No disturbance or removal of soil, gravel or rock
- No living or dead trees or other plant life to be trimmed, cut down destroyed or moved
- No alteration or interference to the hydrology
- No pollution or contamination including refuse disposal
- No soil, garbage or waste deposited
- No hunting<sup>7</sup> or discharge of firearms
- No keeping of domestic or household animals.

There are no other notations, charges, liens or interests.

## 2.9 Local Planning Designations

The Reserve is zoned PR6 (Park and Recreation) (Islands Trust 2019c). The primary objective of this designation is to preserve and protect the natural environment of the island's public recreational lands and park land while providing for local and regional recreation needs (Islands Trust 2008).

The Reserve is within Development Permit Area 6 which designates a high soil erosion area and a high slope stability hazard (Islands Trust 2019c). Development Permit Area 3 protects the foreshore and the land portion of the shoreline next to the ocean in the eastern part of the Reserve (Islands Trust 2019c).

## 2.10 Existing Public and Other Use

Deep Ridge Nature Reserve falls within the territory of multiple First Nations, and as such has been a site of cultural activity and use for thousands of years. There is knowledge and oral history relating to this site that may or may not be shared outside of the membership of a First Nation. As a first step toward strengthening cultural connections to the land that were negatively impacted by European settlement, ITC is exploring the potential of a *Management Plan for Areas of Cultural Heritage and Sacred Significance* that will support and enhance the continued use of the site by First Nations.

---

<sup>6</sup> Gathering and harvesting under Section 35 of the Constitution Act, 1982 recognizes and affirms the inherent rights of Indigenous Peoples.

<sup>7</sup> Hunting under Section 35 of the Constitution Act, 1982 recognizes and affirms the inherent rights of Indigenous Peoples.



There are no authorized public trails in the Reserve. There is a well-used trail in the western portion of the Reserve that is accessed from Peter Arnell Park and forms a loop between two parts of the park trail (map in Figure 2). There are trails in other parts of the Reserve that do not appear to be used frequently by people and are naturally revegetating.

There are peek-a-boo views of the outer Gulf Islands and the BC mainland from a few locations on the property.

### 3.0 Inventory by Ecological Community

#### 3.1 Ecological Significance

Deep Ridge Nature Reserve serves as an important green space and provides an important buffer to the regionally-managed Peter Arnell Park. With Peter Arnell Park, the Reserve forms part of a larger protected area comprising 27 hectares (66 acres) of contiguous protected area.

The Deep Ridge Nature Reserve ranges in elevation from 0-200 metres, with the highest elevation in the western part of the Reserve. The Reserve includes steep rocky outcrops and mossy bluffs. The site has been previously logged, leaving behind regenerating young forests in much of the Reserve. There are stumps throughout the Reserve, primarily Douglas-fir, and currently most of the property is forested with dense second or possibly third growth Douglas-fir forests. Over time this forest will develop into a more complex stand and, if left undisturbed over the long term, will likely develop old growth attributes.

The Reserve is within the Coastal Douglas-fir moist maritime (CDFmm) subzone. There are no significant hydrological features and most surface water flows north to Cusheon Creek and east to the ocean.

There is a large number of fallen trees, including some larger trees in the western part of the Reserve. An extreme windstorm in December 2018 caused a large number of trees to fall on Salt Spring Island including some in Deep Ridge Nature Reserve. There are a large number of small diameter dead standing trees in the Reserve, possibly due to increased drought and/or competition since in some areas the trees have not been shaded by the primary canopy and the salal is also experiencing die-back due to drought.

Two species at risk were recorded in Deep Ridge Nature Reserve: leafless wintergreen and Northern Red-legged Frog. There is high potential



***Photo 5. Northern Red-legged Frog in Deep Ridge Nature Reserve.***

for the blue-listed Ozette coralroot (*Corallorhiza maculata* var. *ozettensis*) to occur since it has been observed in the adjacent Peter Arnell Park and the habitat found in the Reserve is similar to these sites; 2019 surveys were too late to confirm this species. An Olive-sided Flycatcher (*Contopus cooperi*) was heard calling north of the Reserve and may also use the habitat in the Reserve.

A Turkey Vulture (*Cathartes aura*) nest was found under a boulder in the Reserve but few other birds were noted because of the survey time.

Black-tailed Deer (*Odocoileus hemionus*) sign was noted throughout the Reserve and there are deer trails across the slopes throughout the Reserve. High levels of herbivory have limited the diversity of understory species.

**Table 3. Species at Risk in Deep Ridge Nature Reserve.**

| Species Name             |                       | Status     |         |           |             |        |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|------------|---------|-----------|-------------|--------|
| English                  | Scientific            | Provincial | BC List | COSEWIC   | SARA        | Global |
| Leafless wintergreen     | <i>Pyrola aphylla</i> | S3 (2019)  | Blue    | -         | -           | GNR    |
| Northern Red-legged Frog | <i>Rana aurora</i>    | S3 (2016)  | Blue    | SC (2015) | 1-SC (2005) | G4     |

**Table 4. Ecological Communities in Deep Ridge Nature Reserve.**

| Ecological Community Name       |                                                        | Status     |         |        |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|------------|---------|--------|
| English                         | Scientific                                             | Provincial | BC List | Global |
| Douglas-fir / Dull Oregon-grape | <i>Pseudotsuga menziesii</i> / <i>Berberis nervosa</i> | S1 (2018)  | Red     | G2     |

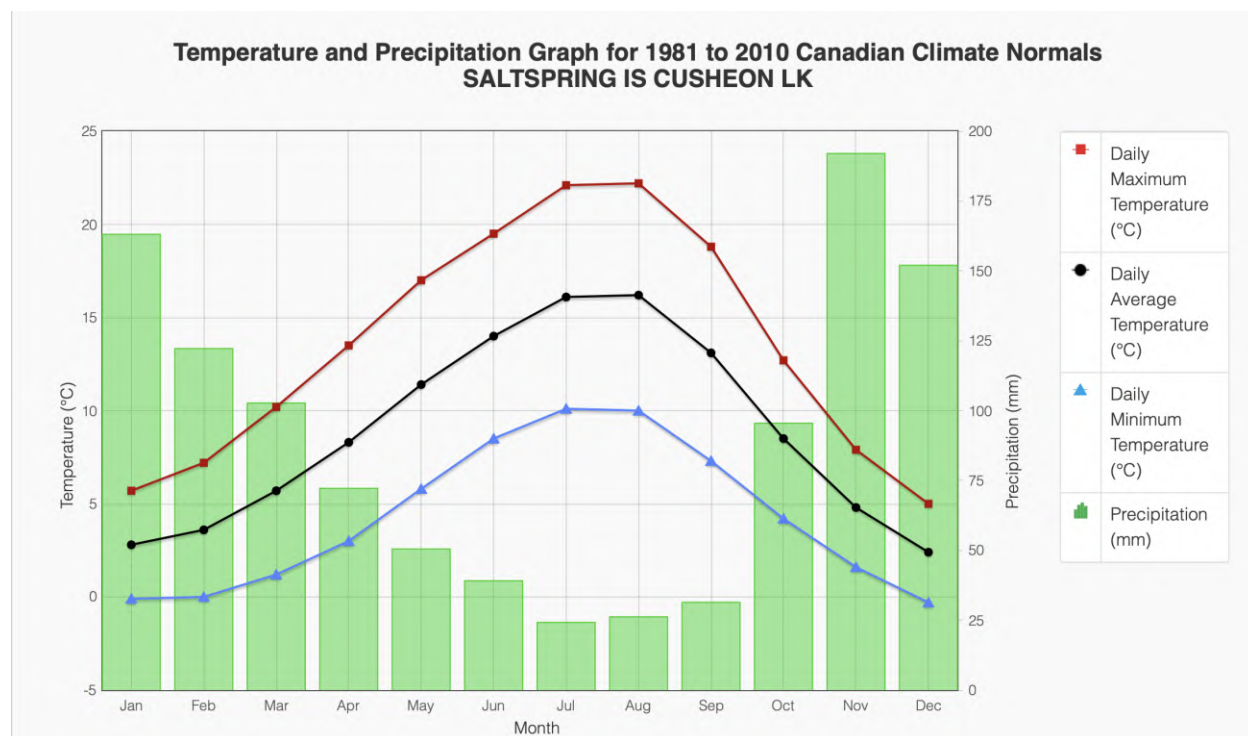
Islands Trust Conservancy acknowledges that there is a wealth of traditional ecological knowledge and a long history of ecosystem stewardship among the First Nations whose territory encompasses Deep Ridge Nature Reserve. ITC will strive to work with First Nations knowledge holders to deepen its understanding, improve its stewardship practices, and, ultimately, support the transfer of traditional ecological knowledge to younger generations within First Nations communities to ensure that it is not lost. At this time, the ecological information presented in this management plan was formed using systems that are based in foundations of Western science.

### 3.2 Climate

The southern Gulf Islands, which includes Salt Spring Island, have a climate pattern of warm, dry summers and mild, wet winters. The maritime influence moderates the effect of elevation, latitude, and aspect on local temperature and precipitation.

The weather statistics for the Cusheon Lake station (the closest station to the Deep Ridge Nature Reserve) show the annual precipitation is approximately 1071 millimetres and most of it comes in the form of rain rather than snow (Environment Canada 2019). On Salt Spring Island, average daily temperatures peak in the summer months (July and August) at 16°C and are lowest in the winter (December and January) at 2.4-2.8°C (Figure 3). The reverse is true for

precipitation, with the winter months from November to January having the highest rainfall (averaging 139-185 millimetres) and July and August being the driest months (24-26 millimetres) (Environment Canada 2019).



**Figure 3. Canadian climate normals for temperature and precipitation at Cusheon Lake weather station, British Columbia from 1981-2018 (Environment Canada 2019).**

The future impacts from climate change are unknown, although a summer drying trend and an increase in storm events are predicted (Mauger et.al. 2015). More powerful storm surges and sea level rise may cause increasing erosion along the shoreline and may cause a loss of coastal habitats (Islands Trust 2019a). Sea level rise and related impacts may lead to a loss of cultural and historical sites on coastlines (Islands Trust 2019a).

Forests may see a shift in the distribution and range of species (Islands Trust 2019a). Climate change may be associated with an increased risk of pest outbreaks, forest fire risk and competition from invasive species (Islands Trust 2019a). Higher temperatures and less precipitation may lead to localized stress on trees and plants. Maintaining habitat connectivity, biodiversity and ecosystem resilience may assist the flora and fauna adapting to climate change stresses.

### 3.3 Geology and Physiology

The Reserve is a long narrow property that follows the upper portion of an east-west ridge with a northern aspect. Elevation ranges from about 200 metres above sea level (asl) in the western part of the property to 100 metres asl before dropping steeply to the shoreline. Slopes in the

western portion of the property range from 30-45% and over the rest of the property range from 70-100%.

Steep slopes, loose surface rock and poorly developed soils reduce the range of uses the property is able to support and makes trail construction and maintenance difficult. Soil erosion potential is high due to steep slopes.

### 3.4 Hydrology

Most of the Reserve is upper slope and moisture shedding. Water flows downslope to the Cusheon Creek valley to the north and east to the ocean. There are no streams on the property although the previous landholder mentioned a spring on the property (Ussery 2004), which was not observed during 2019 surveys. Surface and subsurface runoff collects in hollows and seepage areas at the base of rock faces. Groundwater recharge may occur through faults and contact zones between rock types in underlying bedrock.

### 3.5 Soils

The Deep Ridge Nature Reserve is underlain by sedimentary rock dating from 80 million years before present (van Vliet et al. 1987). Exposed bedrock is common in the hummocky upland terrain. The adjacent valley has eroded from less resistant mudstones and shales, likely along a fault line (van Vliet et al. 1987).

Beddis soil on the westernmost portion of the property developed on deep (>150 centimetre) marine, water or windborne deposits of loamy sand to sandy loam (van Vliet et al. 1987). The soil type is well to rapidly drained with a very low (0-10%) coarse fragment content. Beddis soils remain moist during winter months but quickly dry in the summer (van Vliet et al. 1987).

The majority of the property is underlain by Rumsley soils (van Vliet et al. 1987). This soil type has developed on shallow (<100 centimetre) fallen rock or glacial deposits over bedrock. These sandy loam to loamy sand soils are well drained with a coarse fragment content of 20-50%. Although these soils are dry in summer, they are subject to subsurface water flows when saturated (van Vliet et al. 1987). Rumsley soils in the eastern portion of the property may be only 50 centimetres deep.

### 3.6 Ecological Classifications

The Deep Ridge Nature Reserve occurs within the Coastal Douglas-fir moist maritime (CDFmm) biogeoclimatic zone (Green and Klinka 1994). Climatic factors, in conjunction with existing soil conditions, result in a forest with a long growing season, although water deficits may occur on zonal sites (Green and Klinka 1994). The Reserve is within the Pacific Maritime Ecozone and the Georgia-Puget Basin Ecoregion (Ecological Framework of Canada 2019).

### 3.7 Ecological Communities and Site Series

The previous management plans for Deep Ridge Nature Reserve did not delineate ecological communities. Terrestrial Ecosystem Mapping (TEM) identified 4 units although 3 of these units included only very small portions of the Reserve (iMap 2019). The entire Reserve was



considered to be one ecological community, but three plots were done to capture the range of variation within this community in the Reserve. The ecological descriptions were collected on July 31<sup>st</sup>, 2019.

Site series were identified using *A Field Guide for Site Identification and Interpretation for the Vancouver Forest Region* (Green and Klinka 1994). Structural stage was as defined in *Standards for Terrestrial Ecosystems Mapping in British Columbia* (RIC 1998).

A list of all plant species is included in Appendix A. Locations where photographs were taken and a map showing photo points are included in Appendix B.

The forests in Deep Ridge Nature Reserve are dominated by Douglas-fir although Western Hemlock (*Tsuga heterophylla*) is present in smaller numbers. *Arbutus*<sup>8</sup> (*Arbutus menziesii*) are present in shallower soils and around broken rock throughout the property. Bigleaf maple (*Acer macrophyllum*), western redcedar<sup>9</sup> (*Thuja plicata*), and Red Alder (*Alnus rubra*) are present in moister areas. There are several moss and lichen-covered bedrock outcrops in the property. Garry oak (*Quercus garryana*) and Bitter Cherry (*Prunus emarginata*) were also noted in higher elevations.

Most of the forest is densely stocked with young (approximately 30-60 year old) trees and there is little understory shrub and herbaceous growth. There are large numbers of small diameter standing dead trees (snags) and large amounts of small diameter woody debris on the forest floor, with some larger blowdown from recent windstorms. There are fire scars on the older stumps and some large diameter wildlife trees.



**Photo 6. Larger diameter blowdown next to unauthorized trail in Deep Ridge Nature Reserve.**

---

<sup>8</sup> Culturally significant species

<sup>9</sup> Culturally significant species



### Ecological Community 1. Douglas-fir / Dull Oregon-grape - Plot 1

Ecological Community 1 is the dominant vegetation type throughout the Reserve. Three plots were done in this community to capture the full range of variation in this community throughout the Reserve. The community is a young second or third growth forest dominated by Douglas-fir trees. The age of the largest trees was estimated to be between 30-60 years old, so the age class is young forest although many of the trees are pole/sapling sized. There is a large number of dead, small diameter Douglas-fir trees that have died from competition and/or recent drought conditions. There is a large amount of small diameter coarse woody debris on the forest floor and many Douglas-fir stumps. The site is dry with well-drained, shallow soils.

In plot 1, the land slopes at approximately 60% to the northeast (20°). There is abundant scattered, loose surface rock.



***Photo 7. Vegetation in Ecological Community 1, Plot 1, showing dense young Douglas-fir forest.***



**Photo 8. Vegetation in Ecological Community 1, Plot 1, showing abundant surface rock and steep slopes.**

**Table 5. Description of Ecological Community 1- Plot 1.**

|                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Polygon ID:                       | Ecological Community 1                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Ecological Community:             | Douglas-fir / Dull Oregon-grape                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Classification:                   | CDFmm01                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Structural Stage:                 | Young forest                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Status (BC List):                 | Red-list                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Photopoint(s):                    | PP1                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Ecological Community Description: | Dry, second growth Douglas-fir forest on upper slope. Poor to medium soil nutrient regime and well drained with abundant loose surface rock.                                                                                                                                                         |
| Disturbance Notes:                | Previously logged as evidenced by many stumps. Fires and drought may influence vegetation patterns over time.                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Anticipated Change/Succession:    | Forest will mature and diversify over time. As the forest matures, canopy gaps will create tree regeneration sites.                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Wildlife observations:            | Heard in plot: Common Raven ( <i>Corvus corax</i> ) and Chestnut-backed Chickadee ( <i>Poecile rufescens</i> ).<br>Heard outside of Plot: Northern Pacific Treefrog ( <i>Pseudacris regilla</i> ); Olive-sided Flycatcher ( <i>Contopus cooperi</i> ) calling approximately 200 m north (downslope). |



**Table 6. Vegetation Species in Ecological Community 1- Plot 1.**

| VEGETATION SPECIES                                              | PERCENT COVER (%) |           |             |            |                    |             | NOTES                                                                                 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|-----------|-------------|------------|--------------------|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                                 | Main Canopy       | Secondary | Shrub Layer | Herb Layer | Moss, Lichen Layer | Non-natives |                                                                                       |
| <i>Pseudotsuga menziesii</i> (Douglas-fir)                      | 35                | 10        |             |            |                    |             | MC: 30-60 yrs, ht: 25-30 m, DBH: 37-68 cm<br>SC: 15-20 yrs, ht: 5-15 m, DBH: 10-25 cm |
| <i>Thuja plicata</i> (western redcedar)                         |                   | 2         |             |            |                    |             | SC: 20 yrs, ht: 8 m, DBH: 20 cm                                                       |
| <i>Arbutus menziesii</i> (arbutus)                              |                   | <1        |             |            |                    |             | SC: 15 yrs, ht: 5 m, DBH: 11 cm                                                       |
| <i>Gaultheria shallon</i> (salal)                               |                   |           | 42          |            |                    |             |                                                                                       |
| <i>Holodiscus discolor</i> (oceanspray)                         |                   |           | 5           |            |                    |             |                                                                                       |
| <i>Berberis nervosa</i> (dull Oregon-grape)                     |                   |           | 2           |            |                    |             |                                                                                       |
| <i>Rosa gymnocarpa</i> (baldhip rose)                           |                   |           | 1           |            |                    |             |                                                                                       |
| <i>Lonicera ciliosa</i> (western trumpet)                       |                   |           | <1          |            |                    |             |                                                                                       |
| <i>Vaccinium parvifolium</i> (red huckleberry)                  |                   |           | <1          |            |                    |             |                                                                                       |
| <i>Polystichum munitum</i> (sword fern)                         |                   |           |             | 1          |                    |             |                                                                                       |
| <i>Bromus vulgaris</i> (Columbia brome)                         |                   |           |             | <1         |                    |             |                                                                                       |
| <i>Festuca occidentalis</i> (western fescue)                    |                   |           |             | <1         |                    |             |                                                                                       |
| <i>Lysimachia latifolia</i> (broad-leaved starflower)           |                   |           |             | <1         |                    |             |                                                                                       |
| <i>Melica subulata</i> (Alaska oniongrass)                      |                   |           |             | <1         |                    |             |                                                                                       |
| <i>Russula xerampelina</i> (shrimp russula) mushroom            |                   |           |             | <1         |                    |             |                                                                                       |
| <b>Moss Layer</b>                                               |                   |           |             |            |                    |             | <b>Total Moss Layer: 50%</b>                                                          |
| <i>Hylocomium splendens</i> (step moss)                         |                   |           |             |            | 41                 |             |                                                                                       |
| <i>Rhytidiadelphus loreus</i> (lanky moss)                      |                   |           |             |            | 5                  |             |                                                                                       |
| <i>Eurynchium oreganum</i> (Oregon-beaked moss)                 |                   |           |             |            | 2                  |             |                                                                                       |
| <i>Rhytidiadelphus triquetrus</i> (electrified cat's-tail moss) |                   |           |             |            | 2                  |             |                                                                                       |
| <i>Dicranum sp.</i> (broom moss)                                |                   |           |             |            | <1                 |             |                                                                                       |
| <b>Cover by Layer (%)</b>                                       | <b>35</b>         | <b>12</b> | <b>50</b>   | <b>1</b>   | <b>50</b>          |             | <b>Total Canopy Cover: 47%</b>                                                        |

### Ecological Community 1. Douglas-fir / Dull Oregon-grape - Plot 2

The second plot in Ecological Community 1 is on a very steep slope (100%) with a northern aspect (6°). The site has shallow, rapidly draining soils. There are a large number of loose surface rocks and many young, dead, standing Douglas-fir trees.



**Table 7. Description of Ecological Community 1- Plot 2.**

|                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Polygon ID:                       | Ecological Community 1                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Ecological Community:             | Douglas-fir / Dull Oregon-grape                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Classification:                   | CDFmm01                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Structural Stage:                 | Young forest                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Status (BC List):                 | Red-list                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Photopoint(s):                    | PP2                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Ecological Community Description: | Dry, second growth Douglas-fir forest on upper slope. Poor to medium soil nutrient regime and well-drained with abundant, loose, surface rock.                                                                                                |
| Disturbance Notes:                | Previously logged as evidenced by many stumps. Fire scars on stumps indicate past fire. Drought may influence vegetation patterns over time.                                                                                                  |
| Anticipated Change/Succession:    | Forest will mature and diversify over time. As the forest matures, canopy gaps will create tree regeneration sites.                                                                                                                           |
| Wildlife observations:            | Many Black-tailed Deer ( <i>Odocoileus hemionus</i> ) trails through area. Heard: American Robin ( <i>Turdus migratorius</i> ), Chestnut-backed Chickadee ( <i>Poecile rufescens</i> ) and Red-breasted Nuthatch ( <i>Sitta canadensis</i> ). |

**Table 8. Vegetation Species in Ecological Community 1- Plot 2.**

| VEGETATION SPECIES                                              | PERCENT COVER (%) |           |             |            |                    |             | NOTES                                     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|-----------|-------------|------------|--------------------|-------------|-------------------------------------------|
|                                                                 | Main Canopy       | Secondary | Shrub Layer | Herb Layer | Moss, Lichen Layer | Non-natives |                                           |
| <i>Pseudotsuga menziesii</i> (Douglas-fir)                      | 40                |           |             |            |                    |             | MC: 40-80 yrs, ht: 12-30 m, DBH: 45-60 cm |
| <i>Thuja plicata</i> (western redcedar)                         |                   | 2         |             |            |                    |             | SC: 30 yrs, ht: 12 m, DBH: 30 cm          |
| <i>Tsuga heterophylla</i> (western hemlock)                     |                   | 2         |             |            |                    |             | SC: 15 yrs, ht: 4 m, DBH: 15 cm           |
| <i>Arbutus menziesii</i> (arbutus)                              |                   | 1         |             |            |                    |             | SC: 30 yrs, ht: 10 m, DBH: 30 cm          |
| <i>Gaultheria shallon</i> (salal)                               |                   |           | 5           |            |                    |             |                                           |
| <i>Holodiscus discolor</i> (oceanspray)                         |                   |           | 5           |            |                    |             |                                           |
| <i>Berberis nervosa</i> (dull Oregon-grape)                     |                   |           | 2           |            |                    |             |                                           |
| <i>Lonicera ciliosa</i> (western trumpet)                       |                   |           | <1          |            |                    |             |                                           |
| <i>Lonicera hispidula</i> (hairy honeysuckle)                   |                   |           | <1          |            |                    |             |                                           |
| <i>Vaccinium parvifolium</i> (red huckleberry)                  |                   |           | <1          |            |                    |             |                                           |
| <i>Polystichum munitum</i> (sword fern)                         |                   |           |             | 1          |                    |             |                                           |
| <i>Acer macrophyllum</i> (bigleaf maple)                        |                   |           |             | <1         |                    |             |                                           |
| <i>Amelanchier alnifolia</i> (saskatoon)                        |                   |           |             | <1         |                    |             |                                           |
| <i>Bromus vulgaris</i> (Columbia brome)                         |                   |           |             | <1         |                    |             |                                           |
| <i>Festuca occidentalis</i> (western fescue)                    |                   |           |             | <1         |                    |             |                                           |
| <i>Melica subulata</i> (Alaska oniongrass)                      |                   |           |             | <1         |                    |             |                                           |
| <i>Moehringia macrophylla</i> (large-leaved sandwort)           |                   |           |             | <1         |                    |             |                                           |
| <i>Polypodium glycyrrhiza</i> (licorice fern)                   |                   |           |             | <1         |                    |             |                                           |
| <i>Pseudotsuga menziesii</i> (Douglas-fir)                      |                   |           |             | <1         |                    |             |                                           |
| <b>Moss Layer</b>                                               |                   |           |             |            |                    |             | <b>Total Moss Layer: 75%</b>              |
| <i>Hylocomium splendens</i> (step moss)                         |                   |           |             |            | 71                 |             |                                           |
| <i>Eurynchium oreganum</i> (Oregon-beaked moss)                 |                   |           |             |            | 2                  |             |                                           |
| <i>Rhytidiadelphus triquetrus</i> (electrified cat's-tail moss) |                   |           |             |            | 2                  |             |                                           |
| <i>Dicranum sp.</i> (broom moss)                                |                   |           |             |            | <1                 |             |                                           |
| <i>Rhytidiadelphus loreus</i> (lanky moss)                      |                   |           |             |            | <1                 |             |                                           |
| <b>Cover by Layer (%)</b>                                       | <b>40</b>         | <b>5</b>  | <b>12</b>   | <b>1</b>   | <b>75</b>          |             | <b>Total Canopy Cover: 45%</b>            |



### Ecological Community 1. Douglas-fir / Dull Oregon-grape - Plot 3

Plot 3 is in a moisture-receiving site at the mouth of a small drainage system. The area is at a low elevation and there is marine influence from the ocean. The community is below a steep slope and has an aspect of 38° with a slope of 25%. The soils are shallow and there is a large amount of leaf litter from bigleaf maple.

There are some larger diameter trees and there is a large amount of blowdown, likely from the December 2018 windstorm. There are several wildlife trees including a large grand fir tree. There are stumps showing evidence of former logging.



***Photo 10. Larger diameter trees on level site close to the ocean in Plot 3, Ecological Community 1.***

**Table 9. Description of Ecological Community 1- Plot 3.**

|                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Polygon ID:                       | Ecological Community 1                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Ecological Community:             | Douglas-fir / Dull Oregon-grape                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Classification:                   | CDFmm01                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Structural Stage:                 | Young forest                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Status (BC List):                 | Red-list                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Photopoint(s):                    | PP3                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Ecological Community Description: | Moisture-receiving site in dry second-growth Douglas-fir forest on lower slope. Medium soil nutrient regime and well-drained towards the ocean.                                                                           |
| Disturbance Notes:                | Previously logged as evidenced by stumps. Drought may influence vegetation patterns over time.                                                                                                                            |
| Anticipated Change/Succession:    | Forest will mature and diversify over time. As the forest matures, canopy gaps will create tree regeneration sites.                                                                                                       |
| Wildlife observations:            | Evidence of Black-tailed Deer ( <i>Odocoileus hemionus</i> ) browse.<br>Heard: Chestnut-backed Chickadee ( <i>Poecile rufescens</i> ).<br>Observed: Northern Red-legged Frog ( <i>Rana aurora</i> ) just outside of plot. |



**Table 10. Vegetation Species in Ecological Community 1- Plot 3.**

| VEGETATION SPECIES                                              | PERCENT COVER (%) |                   |             |            |                    |              | NOTES                                                            |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------|------------|--------------------|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                                 | Main Canopy       | Secondary Canopy+ | Shrub Layer | Herb Layer | Moss, Lichen Layer | Non-natives  |                                                                  |
| <i>Pseudotsuga menziesii</i> (Douglas-fir)                      | 30                |                   |             |            |                    |              | MC: 40-60 yrs, ht: 25-30 m, DBH: 35-65 cm                        |
| <i>Abies grandis</i> (grand fir)                                | 2                 |                   |             |            |                    |              | MC: 60 yrs, ht: 30 m, DBH 50 cm<br>SC: 12 yrs, ht: 4 m, DBH: 6cm |
| <i>Acer macrophyllum</i> (bigleaf maple)                        |                   | 30                |             |            |                    |              | SC: 25-50 yrs, ht: 3-10 m, DBH: 30-60 cm                         |
| <i>Thuja plicata</i> (western redcedar)                         |                   | 2                 |             |            |                    |              | SC: 10-20 yrs, ht: 3-7 m, DBH: 5-15cm                            |
| <i>Tsuga heterophylla</i> (western hemlock)                     |                   | 1                 |             |            |                    |              | SC: 15 yrs, ht: 4 m, DBH: 11 cm                                  |
| <i>Berberis nervosa</i> (dull Oregon-grape)                     |                   |                   | 1           |            |                    |              |                                                                  |
| <i>Gaultheria shallon</i> (salal)                               |                   |                   | 1           |            |                    |              |                                                                  |
| <i>Vaccinium parvifolium</i> (red huckleberry)                  |                   |                   | <1          |            |                    |              |                                                                  |
| <i>Polystichum munitum</i> (sword fern)                         |                   |                   |             | 30         |                    |              |                                                                  |
| <i>Achlys triphylla</i> (vanilla leaf)                          |                   |                   |             | 1          |                    |              |                                                                  |
| <i>Galium aparine</i> (cleavers)                                |                   |                   |             | <1         |                    |              |                                                                  |
| <i>Lysimachia latifolia</i> (broad-leaved starflower)           |                   |                   |             | <1         |                    |              |                                                                  |
| <i>Polypodium glycyrrhiza</i> (licorice fern)                   |                   |                   |             | <1         |                    |              |                                                                  |
| <i>Ilex aquifolium</i> (English holly)                          |                   |                   |             |            |                    | <1           |                                                                  |
| <i>Mycelis muralis</i> (wall lettuce)                           |                   |                   |             |            |                    | <1           |                                                                  |
| <b>Moss Layer</b>                                               |                   |                   |             |            |                    |              | <b>Total Moss Layer: 19%</b>                                     |
| <i>Eurynchium oreganum</i> (Oregon-beaked moss)                 |                   |                   |             |            | 15                 |              |                                                                  |
| <i>Rhytidiadelphus triquetrus</i> (electrified cat's-tail moss) |                   |                   |             |            | 2                  |              |                                                                  |
| <i>Hylocomium splendens</i> (step moss)                         |                   |                   |             |            | 2                  |              |                                                                  |
| <i>Rhytidiadelphus loreus</i> (lanky moss)                      |                   |                   |             |            | <1                 |              |                                                                  |
| <b>Cover by Layer (%)</b>                                       | <b>32</b>         | <b>33</b>         | <b>2</b>    | <b>30</b>  | <b>19</b>          | <b>&lt;1</b> | <b>Total Canopy Cover: 65%</b>                                   |

### 3.8 Wildlife Species

The dense forest, steep slopes, and low habitat variability supports limited wildlife. However, standing wildlife trees provide perches for birds of prey, foraging habitat for woodpeckers, nesting habitat for cavity nesting birds and loose bark for bat roosting sites. There are a large number of small-diameter (<20 centimetre) DBH wildlife trees throughout the Reserve. Downed wood provides habitat for amphibians including frogs and salamanders. Black-tailed Deer scat was noted throughout the Reserve and there are deer trails throughout. A list of wildlife species observed in the Reserve during 2019 field work is included in Table 11.

The Reserve likely provides habitat for a wide range of birds, but the field surveys were not done at an ideal time for assessing bird activity. A Turkey Vulture nest was found in the Reserve under a boulder overhang (map in Figure 2). A vulture, possibly a fledged juvenile, took off from beside the boulder when approached and there were a large number of downy feathers and guano present. No eggshells were found in the nest. A raptor nest has been mapped on the property south of the Reserve along the shoreline but this was not observed during 2019 surveys (Islands Trust 2019c).

Few gastropods were found due to the extremely dry conditions during the survey.



***Photo 11. Mix of Douglas-fir and western redcedar young standing dead wildlife trees in Deep Ridge Nature Reserve.***



***Photo 12. Turkey Vulture nest used earlier in the summer of 2019 as evidenced by downy feathers near entrance.***

**Table 11. Wildlife Species Observed in Deep Ridge Nature Reserve.**

| Common Name               | Latin Name                      | Observation Type                                          |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Mammals</b>            |                                 |                                                           |
| Black-tailed Deer         | <i>Odocoileus hemionus</i>      | Scat and browse observed                                  |
| Red Squirrel              | <i>Tamiasciurus hudsonicus</i>  | Visual observation, caches observed, calls heard          |
| <b>Invertebrates</b>      |                                 |                                                           |
| Lancetooth                | <i>Ancotrema</i> sp.            | Visual observation                                        |
| Pacific Bananaslug        | <i>Ariolimax columbianus</i>    | Visual observation                                        |
| Robust Lancetooth         | <i>Haplotrema vancouverense</i> | Visual observation                                        |
| <b>Amphibians</b>         |                                 |                                                           |
| Northern Pacific Treefrog | <i>Pseudacris regilla</i>       | Heard calling                                             |
| Northern Red-legged Frog  | <i>Rana aurora</i>              | Visual observation                                        |
| <b>Birds</b>              |                                 |                                                           |
| American Robin            | <i>Turdus migratorius</i>       | Heard                                                     |
| Bald Eagle                | <i>Haliaeetus leucocephalus</i> | Observed flying over Reserve                              |
| Brown Creeper             | <i>Certhia americana</i>        | Heard and visual observation                              |
| Cassin's Vireo            | <i>Vireo cassinii</i>           | Heard                                                     |
| Chestnut-backed Chickadee | <i>Poecile rufescens</i>        | Heard and visual observation                              |
| Common Raven              | <i>Corvus corax</i>             | Heard and visual observation                              |
| Downy Woodpecker          | <i>Dryobates pubescens</i>      | Heard and visual observation                              |
| Olive-sided Flycatcher    | <i>Contopus cooperi</i>         | Heard north of Reserve                                    |
| Pacific-slope Flycatcher  | <i>Empidonax difficilis</i>     | Heard                                                     |
| Pileated Woodpecker       | <i>Dryocopus pileatus</i>       | Cavities noted in trees                                   |
| Red-breasted Nuthatch     | <i>Sitta canadensis</i>         | Heard                                                     |
| Spotted Towhee            | <i>Pipilo maculatus</i>         | Heard                                                     |
| Turkey Vulture            | <i>Cathartes aura</i>           | Observed flying over Reserve and flying up from nest site |

### 3.9 Expected Change Over Time

The upland forests will continue to mature and diversify over time. In areas with dense young conifers, self-thinning will occur, providing more light for understory plants to grow. There will be slow development of old forest characteristics as trees mature and gaps are created through natural mortality and wind. In areas with dense growth, there will be self-thinning due to density-related mortality.

## 4.0 Threats

**Table 12. Threats to Natural Values in Deep Ridge Nature Reserve.**

| Threats (examples below)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Forest      | Shoreline | Overall Threat Rank |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|-----------|---------------------|
| <b>Recreational Activities:</b> Hiking can impact conservation targets through wildlife disturbance, soil disturbance, vegetation trampling, habitat fragmentation, and erosion. This threat is expected to increase in severity over time with increasing numbers of residents and seasonal visitors to Salt Spring. There are no official hiking trails in the Reserve; however, there is a well-established unauthorized trail in the western part of the Reserve. Trail design and construction is not recommended due to the loose substrate, large number of dead/downed trees and steep terrain. | Medium      | Low       | Medium              |
| <b>Fire (Catastrophic Wildfire):</b> Fire suppression results in a change of fire regime to lower-frequency and higher-intensity fires. Higher-intensity fires are also generally larger in size. A less frequent, more intense fire could potentially replace the forests. Vegetation recovery post-catastrophic fire is slow and invasive terrestrial species are likely to invade into areas with bare soil. Because of the dense forest stands in the Reserve and high abundance of ladder fuels, the impact from a wildfire is likely to be high.                                                  | Medium-High | Low       | Medium-High         |
| <b>Invasive Non-Native Species:</b> Invasive non-native species are a significant threat to biodiversity, second only to habitat loss (IUCN 2018). The impact on native ecosystems, habitats and species can be severe and often irreversible. Except for a few small English holly ( <i>Ilex aquifolium</i> ) plants in the forested area, the Reserve currently has few invasive shrubs.                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Low         | Low       | Low                 |
| <b>Problematic Native Species:</b> Hyper-abundant Black-tailed Deer ( <i>Odocoileus hemionus</i> ) can be problematic, limiting natural regeneration, dramatically altering understory vegetation structure and composition, and adversely affecting songbird populations (Martin et al. 2011). The dense forest canopy limits understory growth so the Reserve likely supports low numbers of deer.                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Low         | N/A       | Low                 |
| <b>Windthrow and Falling Trees:</b> The high density of trees has led to natural mortality and thinning resulting in a large number of small diameter dead and dying standing trees. Because the property is very narrow, disturbances such as logging on adjacent properties will increase the risk of windthrow. The windstorm in December 2018 resulted in some fallen trees.                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Medium      | N/A       | Medium              |

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |               |            |               |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|------------|---------------|
| <b>Shoreline Erosion:</b> The shoreline is steeply sloping and erosion is occurring. Erosion may become more extreme with increasing storm surge associated with climatic events. There is also erosion occurring on the steep slopes above the shoreline. | N/A           | Medium     | Medium        |
| <b>Climate Changes:</b> Over time, the trend towards longer, drier summers and droughts in the region may impact the survival of tree seedlings and even established species such as western redcedar that prefer wetter soils.                            | Unknown       | Unknown    | Unknown       |
| <b>Overall Threat Status for Protected Area</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                            | <b>Medium</b> | <b>Low</b> | <b>Medium</b> |

#### 4.1 Expected Change to Threats Over Time

Recreational activities and unauthorized human disturbance and infractions into the Reserve are likely to increase over time given the increased development pressure on Salt Spring Island and the increase in seasonal visitors.

The threat of catastrophic high-intensity wildfire remains high in the region as climate appears to be shifting to increasingly drier summers and fire suppression remains active in the region.

If left untreated, English holly may spread into other parts of the Reserve.

## 5.0 Community Engagement

### 5.1 Adjacent Landholders

In preparation for the development of the Management Plan, letters were sent to all landholders and neighbours within a 100 metre radius of the Reserve. A total of 9 letters were mailed on November 29, 2019 (Appendix C). The letters contained information about Deep Ridge Nature Reserve, an invitation to a public display, and a questionnaire (see Appendix D).

### 5.2 First Nations

Letters were mailed to the following First Nations on December 2, 2020 (Appendix E):

- Cowichan Tribes, Halalt First Nation, Lyackson First Nation, MÁLEXEL (Malahat) Nation, BOKEĆEN (Pauquachin) First Nation, Penelakut Tribe, SEMYOME (Semiahmoo) First Nation, Stz'uminus (Chemainus) First Nation, WJOŁEŁP (Tsartlip) First Nation, SÁÁUTW (Tsawout) First Nation, Tsawwassen First Nation, WSIKEM (Tseycum) First Nation, Ts'uubaa-asatx (Lake Cowichan) First Nation

This letter provided information about the Nature Reserve and outlined the proposed management plan. It also outlined the commitment to develop a parallel *Management Plan for Areas of Cultural Heritage and Sacred Significance*. This parallel Management Plan sets out guiding principles for cooperative collaboration between ITC and First Nations.

### 5.3 Conservation Partners and Community Members

The Islands Trust Conservancy was present at the Saturday market at Centennial Park, December 14<sup>th</sup>, 2019 from 10:30am to 12:30pm. People attending the market were asked to

provide input on the draft management plan and general management planning for the Reserve. Maps and photographs were presented, and residents were asked for their input at that time.

An online questionnaire was also made available from November 29, 2019 – January 20, 2020.

#### 5.4 Engagement Results

The questionnaire was completed by 12 people. All respondents were full-time Salt Spring Island residents, with 58% living on the northern Salt Spring and 33% living on the mid-island. Many respondents (42%) have visited the Reserve a few times, some (25%) have visited the Reserve a few times per year, one (8%) had been to the Reserve once, and some (25%) had never visited the reserve. All who have visited the Reserve engaged in hiking/walking (100%) and many engaged in wildlife viewing (44%) or dog walking (11%). The most important values for respondents were protection of habitat for at-risk species (83%), conservation for the sake of the intrinsic value of nature (75%), and ecosystem services (58%). Recreational opportunities (42%), educational and research opportunities (42%), aesthetic appeal (25%) and wildlife protection (8%) were also noted as important values by respondents.

### 6.0 Management Recommendations

The general management direction of the Deep Ridge Nature Reserve is to allow natural successional processes. With the exception of fire, natural disturbance factors due to wind (windthrow), pest infestation, disease, and wildlife use should proceed without intervention. Only the removal of invasive plant species is permitted. Trails will not be developed because it is impossible to create trails that are safe for the public and do not disturb the habitat. Public use will not be encouraged in order to limit fragmentation and disturbance. The terrain in the Reserve makes it impossible to create safe trails that will not jeopardize public safety and the Island Trust Conservancy Board moved to not approve the creation of hiking trails in the Reserve.

#### 6.1 Management Roles

The Islands Trust Conservancy is the sole landholder of the Deep Ridge Nature Reserve and there are currently no other management partners. The Islands Trust Conservancy will monitor the property annually to detect any management issues.

#### 6.2 Permitted and Prohibited Uses

There are no authorized trails in the Reserve due to the steep terrain and public access is not encouraged.

The following activities by the public are prohibited:

- Hunting<sup>10</sup>
- Use of motorized vehicles

---

<sup>10</sup> Hunting under Section 35 of the Constitution Act, 1982 recognizes and affirms the inherent rights of Indigenous Peoples.



- Bicycling
- Horseback riding
- Camping
- Fires
- Forestry
- Livestock grazing
- Trail development
- Tree cutting
- Collection of plants, animals or fungi<sup>11</sup>

### 6.3 Proposed Monitoring Program

Annual covenant monitoring is important to ensure that there are no infractions or management issues occurring within the protected area. The focus of covenant monitoring should be along the boundaries of the Reserve where the Reserve abuts private property and the regionally-managed park. Monitoring should determine if any prohibited uses are occurring, such as tree cutting or unauthorized trail development. The proposed monitoring route should follow the boundary of the park on both the northern and southern edges of the property except in the eastern portion of the Reserve where it is not possible to follow the property line due to the steep terrain.

Species at risk surveys and monitoring are encouraged during appropriate times of year to assess which species are present in the Reserve. Removal and monitoring of invasive species spread is advised.

### 6.4 Public Access

There are no authorized public trails in the Reserve, although several unauthorized, closed trails exist in the Reserve. Access for Islands Trust Conservancy monitoring and maintenance is through Peter Arnell Park (see Section 2.3 for additional details).

### 6.5 Signage

There are three Islands Trust Fund signs next to an infrequently used trail near the middle of the Reserve. The signs indicate the boundary of the Nature Reserve, that the area is closed and that the trail is closed. There are two signs in another location indicating that the area is closed and the trail is closed.

---

<sup>11</sup> Harvesting and gathering under Section 35 of the Constitution Act, 1982 recognizes and affirms the inherent rights of Indigenous Peoples.

There is a Parks and Recreation Commission (PARC)/Capital Regional District (CRD) sign at the western boundary of the Reserve next to the main access trail from Peter Arnell Park but the post has fallen over. There is a sign at the eastern part of this trail where it crosses into Peter Arnell Park to the south. See map in Figure 2 for locations of signs.

It is recommended that an Islands Trust Conservancy sign be installed at the western boundary of the park on the same post as the PARC sign and that the post be replaced. It is also recommended that the multiple signs next to the infrequently used trails be removed and replaced with two Islands Trust Conservancy boundary sign indicating there is no access. When signs are updated, it is recommended that general contact information for the Islands Trust Conservancy be included.

As part of reconciliation ITC may discuss signage and naming with First Nations.



**Photo 13. Three Islands Trust Fund signs indicating the boundary and the closed trail.**



**Photo 14. Well-worn trail and boundary sign less than 100 m east of Peter Arnell Parking lot.**

## 6.6 Trail Use, Maintenance and Development

There are no authorized trails in the Reserve. There is a well-worn unauthorized trail that starts at the western boundary of the Reserve less than 100 metres from the Peter Arnell Parking lot (refer to map in Figure 2). The trail branches off a mapped trail in Peter Arnell Park and rejoins the main park trail further to the east. This trail is used regularly and fallen trees have been regularly cleared over the years. Although the trail is signed as being outside of PARC/CRD boundaries, there is no indication that hikers are entering an Islands Trust Conservancy Nature Reserve. It is recommended that this trail be closed and restored.



**Photo 15. Trail closed : over trail.**



**Photo 16. Seed capsules of leafless wintergreen in Deep Ridge Nature Reserve.**

There are additional infrequently used trails to the east (refer to map in Figure 2). There are signs indicating the trails are closed; they appear to receive little use and vegetation has grown over the former trail beds.

Development of trails is not recommended is to ensure public safety and avoid habitat fragmentation and degradation.

## 6.7 Protection Initiatives for Sensitive Ecosystems and Species and Ecosystems at Risk

Trails should not be developed in the Reserve to avoid impacts or degradation and erosion to sensitive habitats and steep terrain.

## 6.8 Ecological Restoration Options

To date, there have been no ecological restoration activities in Deep Ridge Nature Reserve. It is recommended that the unauthorized trail at the western boundary be decommissioned and restored. Restoration efforts should include installing signage at both ends of the trail and placing large amounts of woody debris on the trail bed to discourage use. Further restoration could include installing split rail fencing, as well as planting and fencing native trees and shrubs in the disturbed areas. Planted trees should be monitored annually and cages removed once the trees have grown to a suitable size to be able to withstand some browsing by deer. Species chosen for restoration planting should be chosen from those currently found within the Reserve (Appendix A).



### 6.9 Scientific Research/Education Opportunities

No research has been conducted to date in the Reserve. Possible future research could include species at risk surveys and monitoring during peak season for a variety of species, such as rare plants, mosses and lichens, bats, birds, gastropods, and amphibians.

Leafless wintergreen seed capsules were observed during 2019 surveys in preparation for this management plan. Further surveys earlier in the season would likely find more occurrences of this and other rare species, including possibly Ozette coralroot, which is found in the adjacent Peter Arnell Park.

### 6.10 Exotic and Invasive Species Management

The Reserve is notable for its near lack of exotic and invasive species. A few small English holly (*Ilex aquifolium*) plants were noted and they should be removed as soon as possible before they become well-established and spread to other areas of the Reserve. There is a single Oneseed hawthorn (*Crateagus monogyna*) on an old skid road close to the ocean.



**Photo 17. Small English holly plant in Deep Ridge Nature Reserve.**

### 6.11 Wildfire Risk Management

Wildfire and wildfire suppression can be extremely damaging to sensitive ecosystems. Developing a fire management plan in consultation with the Salt Spring Island Fire Department and BC Wildfire Service to identify optimum fire suppression techniques is recommended. This information should be provided to the province to be included in their annual fire plan. If possible, it is preferred that saltwater or fire retardants are not used for fire suppression since both can cause ecological damage to sensitive ecosystems. Cusheon Lake is a nearby source of freshwater on Salt Spring that should be used for bucketing in case of a wildfire.

### 6.12 Climate Change Impacts and Management

The Coastal Douglas-fir biogeoclimatic zone is highly sensitive to climate change (Hebda 1997). Climate change may impact the distribution of ecosystems across the landscape, affecting vegetation patterns, hydrology, and outbreaks of pests (Islands Trust 2019a). Trends that may prevail across British Columbia and the Yukon include upslope migration of tree lines and ecosystem boundaries, and increased fire frequency (Hebda 1997). In the CDFmm, warm dry conditions will favour the replacement of forests by woodland or meadow/knoll characteristics and warm and mesic conditions may lead to the development of Garry oak woodlands and forests (Hebda 1997). Western redcedar is already experiencing dieback in many areas of Salt Spring, presumably due to drought conditions associated with climate change.

Ensuring ongoing protection and connectivity between large areas of protected ecosystems will aid the dispersal of species into new habitats and across elevations as vegetation patterns shift. These protected area matrices will provide potential reservoirs for dispersal into suitable habitats in adjacent areas as climate change shifts the distribution of these ecosystem types (McCloskey et al. 2009).

## 7.0 Action Items

### 7.1 Immediate Actions (1-2 years)

1. Support all partners, contractors and volunteers to complete cultural competency training in regard to reconciliation, knowledge and history of Coast Salish and Indigenous Peoples.
2. Engage with First Nations to ensure that the management plan is reflective of treaty, inherent rights, and the territories of each Nation.
3. Work in collaboration towards a Management Plan for Areas of Cultural Heritage, gathering and harvesting, and Sacred Significance with First Nations.
4. Continue to work with the Parks and Recreation Commission (PARC) to discourage the use of trails in the Reserve.
5. Install a new post and signage at the western boundary of the Reserve next to the well-used unauthorized trail close to the parking lot.
6. Install Islands Trust Conservancy boundary signage at access points from Peter Arnell Park to identify the area as a Nature Reserve and outline prohibited uses.
7. Remove multiple signs at closed trail locations and replace with a single boundary sign with Islands Trust Conservancy contact information indicating public access is not allowed.
8. Remove isolated non-native English holly from the Reserve before it becomes established.

### 7.2 Short term Actions (3-5 years)

1. Prepare a wildfire management plan that considers both forest ecology and prevention of damage to surrounding neighbourhoods in consultation with the local fire authorities.
2. Develop and implement a trail decommissioning and restoration plan for the unofficial trail at the western boundary of the Reserve.

### 7.3 Long term Actions (5+ years)

1. Conduct surveys for species at risk and other wildlife (e.g. plants, amphibians, bats) to provide a better understanding of the natural values of the Reserve.
2. Monitor trail restoration work if implemented and remove cages around planted native species if necessary.

### 7.4 Ongoing or Annual Action Items

1. Conduct annual monitoring to identify management concerns, including off-trail public use and invasive species.
2. Conduct ongoing maintenance of signs.

3. Continue to inform the general public of the natural values of the site and the permitted and prohibited uses through information placed in local publications.

## 8.0 Conclusion

Deep Ridge Nature Reserve is an important protected area in the Coastal Douglas-fir biogeoclimatic zone and on Salt Spring Island. Although impacted by logging, over time the land will develop into a mature forest. The Reserve provides important connectivity for wildlife habitat with Peter Arnell Park.

The Islands Trust Conservancy will act on the management action items identified in this plan to achieve the vision, objectives and purpose of the Nature Reserve. Future management issues may lead to further action items that will be identified in work plans and in future revisions of this plan.



## 9.0 References

Ecological Framework of Canada. 2019. Ecoregions of Canada. Website:

<http://ecozones.ca/english/region/195.html> (Accessed September 2019).

Green, R.N. and K. Klinka. 1994. A Field Guide to Site Identification and Interpretation for the Vancouver Forest Region. Land Management Handbook No. 28. Ministry of Forests. Victoria, B.C.

Government of Canada. 2019. Canadian Climate Normals: 1981 to 2010 Climate Normals and Averages. Website: [http://climate.weather.gc.ca/climate\\_normals/index\\_e.html?#1981](http://climate.weather.gc.ca/climate_normals/index_e.html?#1981) (Accessed September 2019).

Hatfield, Chris. 2015. Address to the Historical Society. Chris Hatfield talks about the History of Cusheon Cove. September 14, 2005. Website: <https://saltspringarchives.com/audio/hatfield.html> (Accessed September 2019).

Hebda, R.J. 1997. Chapter 13: Impacts of Climate Change on Biogeoclimatic Zones of British Columbia and Yukon *In* Responding to Global Climate Change in British Columbia and Yukon, Volume 1 of the Canada Country Study: Climate Impacts and Adaptations. *Eds* E.Taylor and B. Taylor. Pp. 13-1 - 13-15.

International Union for Conservation of Nature (IUCN). 2019. Invasive Species. Website: <https://www.iucn.org/theme/species/our-work/invasive-species> (Accessed September 2019).

Islands Trust. 2008. Salt Spring Island Local Trust Committee Official Community Plan: Bylaw No. 434, 2008. Schedule "A". Volume 1: Land Use and Servicing Objectives. Adopted October 2, 2008/Consolidated Version June 2019. Website: [http://www.islandstrust.bc.ca/media/329643/ss-bl-434\\_ocp\\_vol-1\\_2019.pdf](http://www.islandstrust.bc.ca/media/329643/ss-bl-434_ocp_vol-1_2019.pdf) (Accessed September 2019).

Islands Trust. 2019. Fact Sheet: The Science of Climate Change. Web site: <http://www.islandstrust.bc.ca/media/342907/01laclimchgefactsheets.pdf> (Accessed January 2019).

Islands Trust. 2019b. Islands Trust Object. Website: <http://www.islandstrust.bc.ca/trust-council/islands-trust-act/> (Accessed September 2019).

Islands Trust 2019c. MapIt. Website: <http://mapit.islandstrust.bc.ca/Html5Viewer/Index.html?configBase=http://mapit.islandstrust.bc.ca/Geocortex/Essentials/REST/sites/MapIT/viewers/MapIT/virtualdirectory/Resources/Config/Default&runworkflow=Startup&Proceed=Prop> (Accessed September 2019).

Lockwood, M. 2006. Global protected area framework. *In* M. Lockwood, M. Lockwood, G. L. Worboys, and A. Kothari (Eds.). *Managing Protected Areas: A Global Guide* (p. 84). London: Earthscan.

McCloskey, S.P.J., L.D. Daniels, and J.A. McLean. 2009. Potential impacts of climate change on Western Hemlock Looper outbreaks. *Northwest Science*. 83(3): 225-238.

Martin, T.G., P. Arcese, and N. Scheerder. 2011. Browsing down our natural heritage: Deer impacts on vegetation structure and songbird populations across an island archipelago. *Biological Conservation* 144(2011): 459-469.

Mauger, G.S., J.H. Casola, H.A. Morgan, R.L. Strauch, B. Jones, B. Curry, T.M. Busch Isaken, L. Whitely Binder, M.B. Krosby, and A.K. Snover. 2015. State of Knowledge: Climate Change in Puget Sound. Report prepared for the Puget Sound Partnership and the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. Climate Impacts Group, University of Washington, Seattle. doi:10.7915/CIG93777D.

Resource Inventory Committee (RIC). 1998. *Field Manual for Describing Terrestrial Ecosystems*. Co-published by Ministry of Forests and Ministry of Environment, Province of BC, Victoria, BC.

Torgimson, C. 2009. Letter to TD Blazecka dated July 3, 2009 from the chair of the Islands Trust Fund Board.

Ussery, J. 2004. Management Plan for the Deep Ridge Nature Reserve, Salt Spring Island. Website: <http://www.islandstrustconservancy.ca/media/10367/itfmgmtplandridge.pdf> (Accessed August 2019).

van Vliet, L.P.J, E.A. Kenney and A.J. Green. 1987. Soils of the Gulf Islands of British Columbia: Volume 4. Soils of Salt Spring Island. Report No. 43. British Columbia Soil Survey. Research Branch. Agriculture Canada. Ottawa, Ontario.

Wilcox, L. 2020. Cultural knowledge holder teachings from Coast Salish Elders and Hereditary Chiefs

## 10.0 Appendices

### Appendix A. Vegetation found in Deep Ridge Nature Reserve.

| Common Name                                        | Latin Name               | Status     |
|----------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|------------|
| <i>Abies grandis</i>                               | Grand fir                |            |
| <i>Acer macrophyllum</i>                           | Bigleaf maple            |            |
| <i>Achlys triphylla</i>                            | Vanilla-leaf             |            |
| <i>Adenocaulon bicolor</i>                         | Pathfinder               |            |
| <i>Aira praecox</i>                                | Early hairgrass          | Introduced |
| <i>Alnus rubra</i>                                 | Red alder                |            |
| <i>Amelanchier alnifolia</i>                       | Saskatoon                |            |
| <i>Anthoxanthum odoratum</i>                       | Sweet vernalgrass        | Introduced |
| <i>Arbutus menziesii</i>                           | Arbutus                  |            |
| <i>Berberis nervosa</i>                            | Dull Oregon-grape        |            |
| <i>Bromus vulgaris</i>                             | Columbia brome           |            |
| <i>Buckiella undulata</i>                          | Flat-moss                |            |
| <i>Campanula scouleri</i>                          | Scouler's harebell       |            |
| <i>Cardamine</i> sp.                               | Bittercress              |            |
| <i>Chimaphila umbellata</i> ssp. <i>umbellata</i>  | Common pipsissewa        |            |
| <i>Corallorhiza</i> sp.                            | Coralroot                |            |
| <i>Dicranum</i> sp.                                | Broom moss               |            |
| <i>Crateagus monogyna</i>                          | Oneseed hawthorn         | Introduced |
| <i>Digitalis purpurea</i>                          | Foxglove                 | Introduced |
| <i>Eurhynchium oreganum</i>                        | Oregon beaked-moss       |            |
| <i>Festuca occidentalis</i>                        | Western fescue           |            |
| <i>Galium aparine</i>                              | Cleavers                 |            |
| <i>Gaultheria shallon</i>                          | Salal                    |            |
| <i>Goodyera oblongifolia</i>                       | Rattlesnake plantain     |            |
| <i>Heuchera micrantha</i>                          | Small-flowered alumroot  |            |
| <i>Holodiscus discolor</i>                         | Oceanspray               |            |
| <i>Hylocomium splendens</i>                        | Step moss                |            |
| <i>Ilex aquifolium</i>                             | English holly            | Introduced |
| <i>Linnaea borealis</i> ssp. <i>borealis</i>       | Twinflower               |            |
| <i>Lonicera ciliosa</i>                            | Western trumpet          |            |
| <i>Lonicera hispidula</i>                          | Hairy honeysuckle        |            |
| <i>Luzula subsessilis</i>                          | Short-stalked wood-rush  |            |
| <i>Lysimachia latifolia</i>                        | Broad-leaved starflower  |            |
| <i>Melica subulata</i>                             | Alaska oniongrass        |            |
| <i>Moehringia macrophylla</i>                      | Big-leaved sandwort      |            |
| <i>Montia parvifolia</i>                           | Small-leaved montia      |            |
| <i>Mycelis muralis</i>                             | Wall lettuce             | Introduced |
| <i>Nemophila parviflora</i> var. <i>parviflora</i> | Small-flowered nemophila |            |
| <i>Osmorhiza berteroi</i>                          | Mountain sweet-cicely    |            |
| <i>Platanthera transversa</i>                      | Royal rein orchid        |            |
| <i>Polypodium glycyrrhiza</i>                      | Licorice fern            |            |
| <i>Polystichum munitum</i>                         | Sword fern               |            |

|                                   |                             |            |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|------------|
| <i>Prunus emarginata</i>          | Bitter cherry               |            |
| <i>Pseudotsuga menziesii</i>      | Douglas-fir                 |            |
| <i>Pteridium aquilinum</i>        | Bracken fern                |            |
| <i>Pyrola aphylla</i>             | Leafless wintergreen        | Blue List  |
| <i>Quercus garryana</i>           | Garry oak                   |            |
| <i>Rhytidiadelphus triquetrus</i> | Electrified cat's-tail moss |            |
| <i>Rosa gymnocarpa</i>            | Baldhip rose                |            |
| <i>Rubus ursinus</i>              | Trailing blackberry         |            |
| <i>Rumex acetosella</i>           | Sheep sorrel                | Introduced |
| <i>Russula brevipes</i>           | Short-stemmed russula       |            |
| <i>Russula xerampelina</i>        | Shrimp russula              |            |
| <i>Sanicula crassicaulis</i>      | Pacific sanicle             |            |
| <i>Sedum spathulifolium</i>       | Broad-leaved stonecrop      |            |
| <i>Thuja plicata</i>              | Western redcedar            |            |
| <i>Tsuga heterophylla</i>         | Western hemlock             |            |
| <i>Urtica dioica</i>              | Stinging nettle             |            |
| <i>Vaccinium parvifolium</i>      | Red huckleberry             |            |
| <i>Veronica officinalis</i>       | Common speedwell            | Introduced |

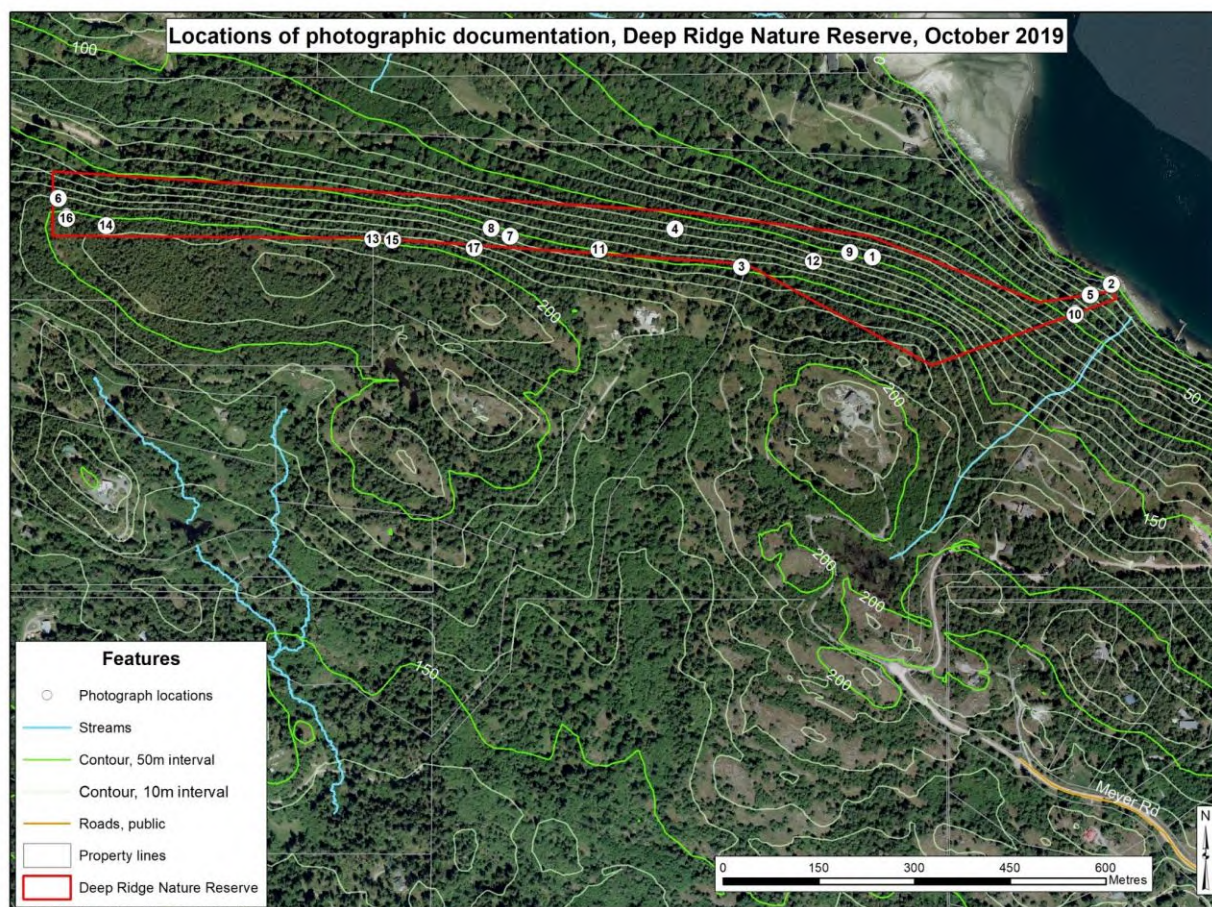
**Appendix B. Photographic Documentation.**

| PHOTO STATION                               | LOCATION (UTM Coordinates) | DIRECTION    | PHOTO-GRAPHER | DATE YYYY-MM-DD | DESCRIPTION                                                                                      |
|---------------------------------------------|----------------------------|--------------|---------------|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Anthropogenic Features as noted on Figure 2 |                            |              |               |                 |                                                                                                  |
| P3                                          | 468695;<br>5405576         | 71°          | LM            | 2019-07-31      | ITCC signs (2): "Trail Closed" and "Closed Area" signs                                           |
| P4                                          | 468594;<br>5405638         | 293°         | LM            | 2019-07-31      | Old skid road with vegetation beginning to establish.                                            |
| P13                                         | 468122;<br>5405622         | 105°         | LM            | 2019-07-31      | ITC signs (3): Boundary sign, "Trail Closed" and "Closed Area" signs                             |
| P14                                         | 467702;<br>5405644         | 345°         | LM            | 2019-07-31      | Well-worn train in western part of the Reserve off Peter Arnell Park with PARC/CRD boundary sign |
| P15                                         | 468133;<br>5405624         | 83°          | LM            | 2019-07-31      | Closed area sign showing regrowth of vegetation over trail.                                      |
| Natural Features as noted on Figure 2       |                            |              |               |                 |                                                                                                  |
| P1                                          | 468871;<br>5405602         | 100°         | LM            | 2019-07-31      | Maturing second growth forest                                                                    |
| P2                                          | 469278;<br>5405552         | 178°         | LM            | 2019-07-31      | Shoreline of Deep Ridge Nature Reserve                                                           |
| P5                                          | 469205;<br>5405516         | 0°           | LM            | 2019-07-31      | Northern Red-legged Frog                                                                         |
| P6                                          | 467627;<br>5405686         | 350°         | CM            | 2019-09-11      | Large diameter blowdown                                                                          |
| P7; P8                                      | 468314;<br>5405627         | 308°<br>188° | LM            | 2019-07-31      | Centre of Plot 1, Ecological Community 1                                                         |
| p9                                          | 468871;<br>5405602         | 3°           | LM            | 2019-07-31      | Centre of plot 2, Ecological Community 1                                                         |
| P10                                         | 469219<br>5405521          | 80°          | LM            | 2019-07-31      | Centre of Plot 3, Ecological Community 1                                                         |

|     |                    |      |    |            |                                                  |
|-----|--------------------|------|----|------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| P11 | 468474<br>5405606  | 73°  | LM | 2019-07-31 | Patch of young, dead,<br>standing wildlife trees |
| P12 | 468811;<br>5405588 | 166° | LM | 2019-07-31 | Turkey Vulture nest                              |
| P16 | 467631;<br>5405680 | 0°   | LM | 2019-07-31 | Leafless wintergreen seed<br>capsules            |
| P17 | 468279;<br>5405614 | 225° | LM | 2019-07-31 | Small English holly plant                        |

\* LM=Laura Matthias

### Map of Photographic Documentation.





### Appendix C. Letter to Neighbours.



ISLANDS TRUST CONSERVANCY

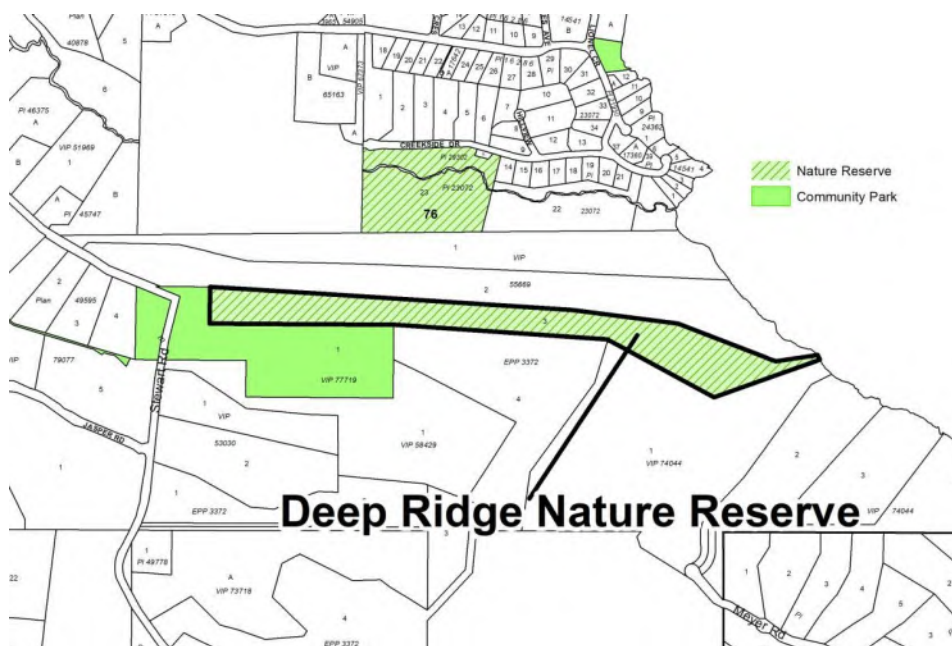
Protecting Canada's Islands in the Salish Sea

November 29, 2019

Dear Neighbour,

The Islands Trust Conservancy is updating the management plan to guide management of the Deep Ridge Nature Reserve for the next 10 years and we are interested in hearing from you.

The Deep Ridge Nature Reserve (PID 018-031-552, Lot 3, Sections 75 and 76, South Salt Spring Island, Cowichan District, Plan VIP55669) is an 14.2-hectare (35 acre) protected area located on the southeast coast of Salt Spring Island, south of Cusheon Creek and adjacent to the Capital Regional District managed Peter Arnell Park.



The reserve was logged in the past and is currently a steeply sloping young forest, which will likely mature into a red-listed ecological community. There are a number of wildlife trees, primarily small diameter standing dead trees. Two species at risk have been observed on the land, leafless wintergreen and Northern Red-legged Frog. The Islands Trust Conservancy works to manage the property to protect its natural values, sensitive ecosystems, and threatened species.



The Islands Trust Conservancy will work in partnership with the Ministry of Transportation and Infrastructure and the Capital Regional District who hold a conservation covenant on the Nature Reserve. There are restrictions on the use of the property, outlined in the covenant, that have been put in place to protect the native plants and animals within the reserve.

Your input is requested for the development of the next Deep Ridge Nature Reserve Management Plan. As a neighbour of the reserve, we would like to hear your ideas and concerns regarding the long-term management of this special place.

The enclosed questionnaire can be:

- completed online at <https://www.surveymonkey.com/r/DeepRidge> or through our website: <http://www.islandstrustconservancy.ca>;
- returned by mail to the Victoria office at 200 – 1627 Fort Street, Victoria, BC V8R 1H8; or,
- dropped off in person at the Islands Trust office on Salt Spring Island at 1 – 500 Lower Ganges Road.

**The deadline to complete the survey is January 20, 2019.**

If you would like to share your input in person, I will be at Saturday market at Centennial Park, December 14<sup>th</sup>, 2019 from 10:30am to 12:30pm to ask for input about the Deep Ridge Nature Reserve, as well as the Lower Mt. Erskine Nature Reserve, management planning process.

Thank you for taking the time to share your ideas regarding management of the Deep Ridge Nature Reserve. For more information, please contact me at the phone number or email listed below.

Sincerely,

Nuala Murphy

Property Management Specialist, Islands Trust Conservancy 250-405-5193

[nmurphy@islandstrust.bc.ca](mailto:nmurphy@islandstrust.bc.ca)



PHONE: (250) 405-5151 • FAX: (250) 405-5155 • 200-1627 FORT ST, VICTORIA, BC, V8R 1H8  
ITCMAIL@ISLANDSTRUST.BC.CA • WWW.ISLANDSTRUSTCONSERVANCY.BC.CA

**Appendix D. Questionnaire sent to Neighbours and Available Online.**

## Deep Ridge Nature Reserve Questionnaire

---

Deep Ridge Nature Reserve, established in 1992, is a 14.2-hectare nature reserve located on the southeast coast of Salt Spring Island, south of Cusheon Creek. Deep Ridge Nature Reserve ranges in elevation from 0-200 m and is a strip of steeply sloping forested ridge that includes 14 metres of oceanfront. The Reserve provides a buffer to adjacent Peter Arnell Park and though it is currently a young forest after logging and fire approximately 60 years ago, it is an important protected area in the Coastal Douglas-fir moist maritime (CDFmm) subzone on Salt Spring Island.

The Islands Trust Conservancy's primary goal is to protect and nurture the sensitive ecosystems and natural values on this land. The information and actions required to achieve this goal and guide the management of the property are set out in a management plan that is updated every 10 years. We welcome community input and ask you to share your thoughts on the protection and long-term management of the Deep Ridge Nature Reserve.

### 1. Are you a resident of Salt Spring Island?

- ☐ Yes, I live on north Salt Spring Island
- ☐ Yes, I live mid-island
- ☐ Yes, I live on south Salt Spring Island
- ☐ No, I'm a visitor

### 2. Have you ever visited Deep Ridge Nature Reserve? If so, how often?

- ☐ No, never
- ☐ Once
- ☐ A few times
- ☐ A few times per year
- ☐ Once a month or more

### 3. If you have visited Deep Ridge Nature Reserve before, what did you do there?

- ☐ Hiking/walking
- ☐ Wildlife viewing
- ☐ Dog walking
- ☐ Other (please list):

### 4. Please list any wildlife and unique plant species you have seen in or near Deep Ridge Nature Reserve:



**5. What do you believe to be the most important values of nature reserves? (choose three)**

- ☐ Protection of habitat for at-risk species
- ☐ Ecosystem services (e.g. clean water and air, erosion control, groundwater recharge, etc.)
- ☐ Recreational opportunities
- ☐ Education and research opportunities
- ☐ Tourism
- ☐ Aesthetic appeal
- ☐ Conservation for the sake of the intrinsic value of nature
- ☐ Other (please specify):

**6. What activities do you believe are incompatible with the protection of natural features, and should not be allowed within the Deep Ridge Nature Reserve?**

**7. What do you feel could be the greatest threat to the health of this nature reserve, and should be the highest management priority for the Islands Trust Conservancy?**

**8. Please provide any other relevant information that will help us make the best management decisions for Deep Ridge Nature Reserve.**

**9. Please share with us any history you know about this property or any knowledge you have about unique cultural or other special features on the property or in the area.**

**10. If you would like to receive periodic updates from the Islands Trust Conservancy on this and other conservation projects on the islands, please provide your name and email address:**

*Thank you for your time spent helping us plan the future of Deep Ridge Nature Reserve.*



***Appendix E. Letter to First Nations.***

December 2, 2020

Dear Chief and Council,

Re: Islands Trust Conservancy Nature Reserves on Salt Spring Island

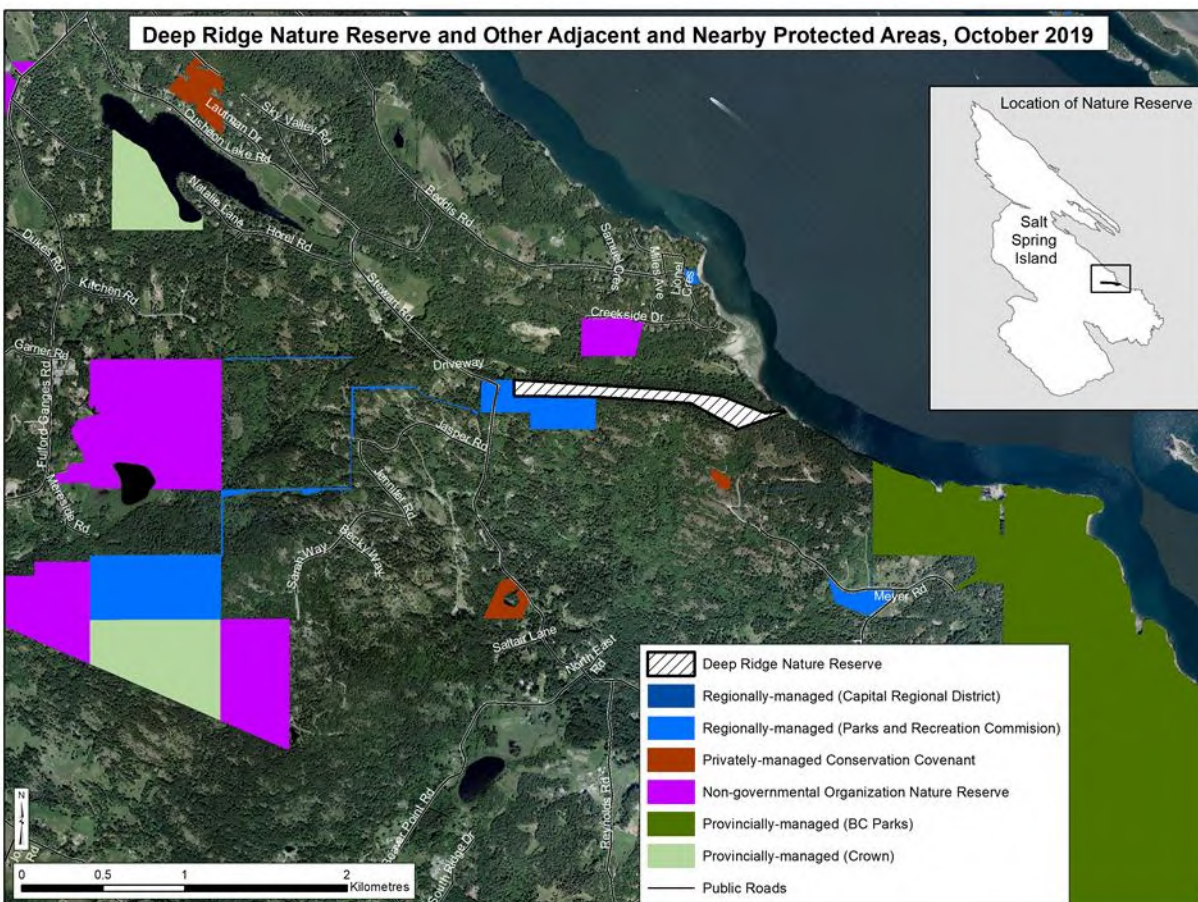
The Islands Trust Conservancy, through its work as a land trust, is drafting management plans for the Deep Ridge Nature Reserve and the Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve on Salt Spring Island.

The nature reserves are within your First Nations treaty and/or territorial lands and waters and we want to ensure that the direction of the management plans is reflective of both reconciliation and conservation goals. At this time, ITC would like to work with you to understand the cultural significance and traditional use of the area so that these values can also be preserved and protected—now and into the future. We understand that the cultural significance of this land may be confidential and we would work with you to ensure that the management plan reflects this significance appropriately. Acknowledging the importance of naming and recognition, if there is signage, names, or place names that should be used for these areas please let us know.

Deep Ridge Nature Reserve (PID 018-031-552, Lot 3, Sections 75 and 76, South Salt Spring Island, Cowichan District, Plan VIP55669) is a 14.2-hectare (35 acre) protected area located on the southeast coast of Salt Spring Island, south of Cusheon Creek and adjacent to the Capital Regional District managed Peter Arnell Park.

The reserve was logged in the past and is currently a steeply sloping young forest, which will likely mature into a red-listed ecological community. There are a number of wildlife trees, primarily small diameter standing dead trees. Two species at risk have been observed on the land: leafless wintergreen and Northern Red-legged Frog.

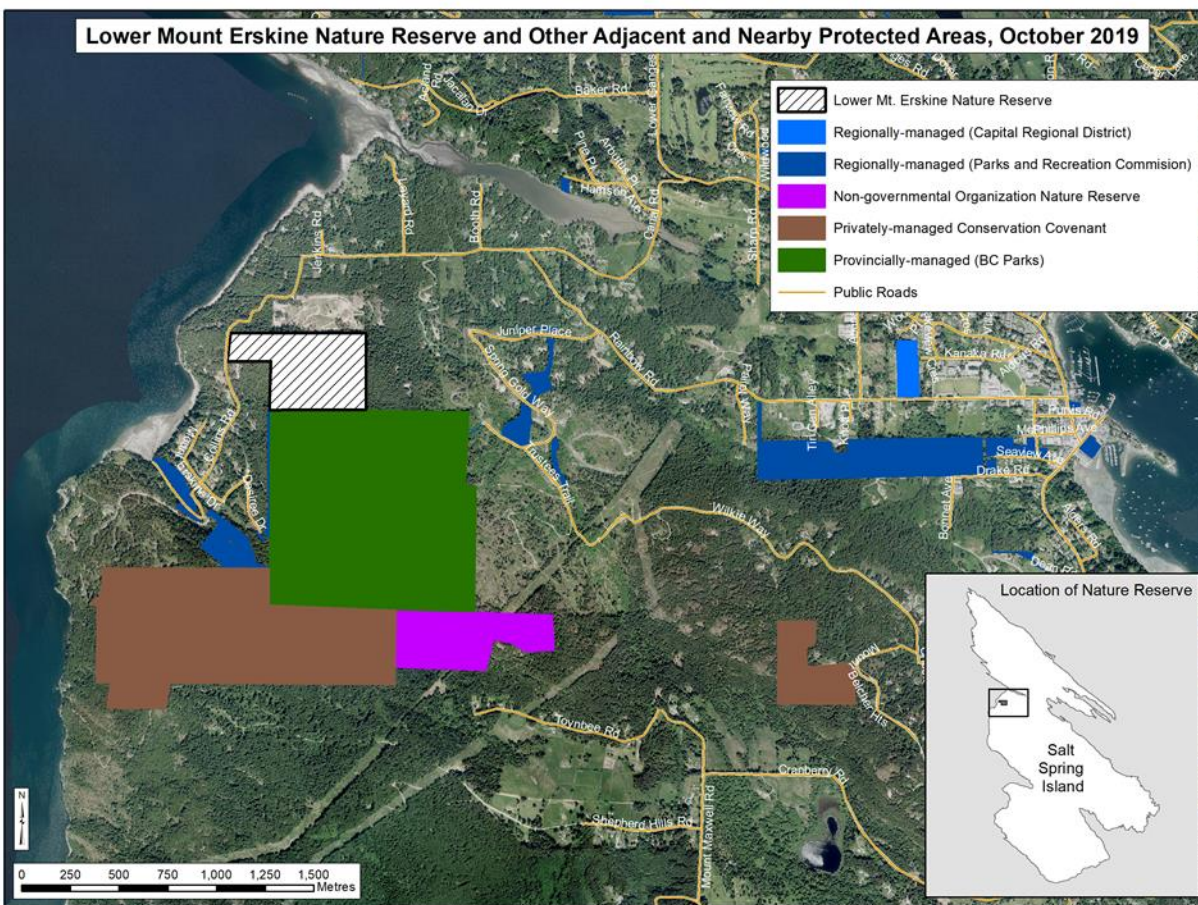




Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve (PID 001-384-333, Lot 3, Section 2, Range 1 and 2 West, North Salt Spring Island, Cowichan District, Plan 29481) is a 22-hectare (54 acre) protected area located on the northwest slopes of Mount Erskine between Booth Bay and Erskine Point on the northwestern part of Salt Spring Island.

Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve serves as an important green space, part of a 150 ha (372 acre) contiguous protected area when combined with Mount Erskine Provincial Park and the Salt Spring Island Conservancy managed Manzanita Ridge Nature Reserve. The diversity of elevations, aspects, moisture regimes, forest ages and habitat types in the reserve support a range of plant and animal species. ITC works in partnership with Nature Conservancy of Canada and Habitat Acquisition Trust, who hold a conservation covenant on this land to conserve its unique natural and ecological value.





Islands Trust Conservancy would like to undertake an archaeological review or traditional use study in collaboration with you. Islands Trust Conservancy passed a Reconciliation Declaration, committing to building relationships to work with your Nation to protect and manage the area and any cultural heritage sites in these nature reserves in a way that is reflective of treaty, inherent rights, and the territorial lands of your Nation.

You may also be interested to know that Islands Trust Conservancy has developed a draft management plan template that includes cultural heritage and spiritual significance. I would be pleased to provide it to you, as a starting point if you would like to comment on it.

Thank you for considering our request to work together. Please contact me at the number or email listed below. Thank you for your kind consideration.

Sincerely,

*N. Murphy*

Nuala Murphy  
Property Management Specialist  
Islands Trust Conservancy  
250-405-5193 | nmurphy@islandstrust.bc.ca

Islands Trust Conservancy's Victoria office is located in Coast Salish territory and we acknowledge with respect the the BOKEĆEN, Cowichan Tribes, Halalt, Homalco, K'ómoks, Klahoose, Ts'uubaa-asatx, Lək ʷəŋən (SXIMEŁŁ, Songhees, T'Sou-ke), Lyackson, MÁLEXET, Penelakut, Qualicum, Scia'new, səliłwətaʔt, SEMYOME, shíshálh, Snaw-naw-as, Snuneymuxw, Skwxwú7mesh, SṪÁUTW, Stz'uminus, Tla'amin, scə́waθən məsteyəxʷ, We Wai Kai, Wei Wai Kum, ʷJOŁŁP, ʷSIKEM, and xʷməθkʷəy̓əm territories in which we live and work.



## REQUEST FOR DECISION

**To:** Islands Trust Conservancy Board      **For the Meeting of:** January 26, 2021  
**From:** Staff      **Date Prepared:** January 4, 2021

**SUBJECT:** Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve Management Plan, Salt Spring Island

---

**RECOMMENDATION:** That the Islands Trust Conservancy Board approve the 2020 update of the Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve Management Plan dated December 14, 2020.

---

### 1 PURPOSE:

To approve the revision of the management plan for Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve.

### 2 BACKGROUND:

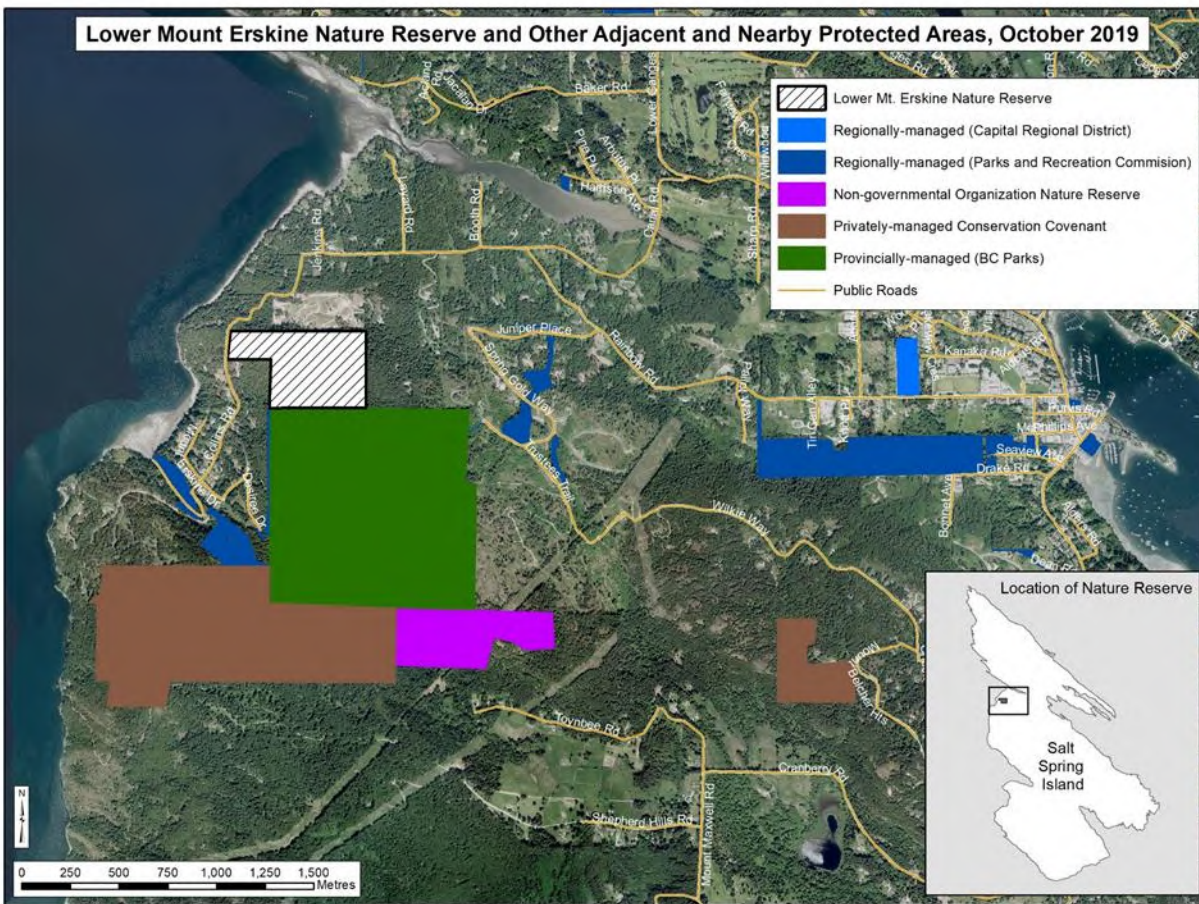
Islands Trust Conservancy Board policy (ITC 2.3) indicates, “The Board will prepare and approve a management plan for each property it acquires as a Nature Reserve...within one year of acquisition, and will update each management plan approximately every 10 years.” Islands Trust Conservancy management plans:

- Provide general and descriptive information on the property, including location, history, and land use;
- Set out the conservation goals and objectives for the property;
- Identify the property's ecological and/or cultural values and features;
- Describe the management issues associated with the property; and
- Provide short and long-term management recommendations (action items or tasks) on issues such as: invasive species management; species at risk protection; public access and safety; educational and research opportunities; and signage needs.

Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve is a 22.5-hectare property located on the northwest slopes of Mount Erskine between Booth Bay and Erskine Point on the northwestern part of Salt Spring Island (Figure 1). The Nature Reserve consists of a steeply sloping forested area with rocky bluffs and outcroppings. The elevation ranges from 60 to 250 metres. The Nature Reserve is a popular hiking destination and there is a well-used trail network that leads to the summit of Mount Erskine in the adjacent provincial park. Along with the adjacent Mount Erskine Provincial Park and Manzanita Ridge Nature Reserve it forms an important, large, contiguous natural area measuring 150 hectares (372 acres) in the Coastal Douglas-fir (CDFmm) and Coastal Western Hemlock (CWHxm) biogeoclimatic zones.

There are five rare ecological communities within the Nature Reserve (Table 1), but no rare species have been found, though species at risk have been observed on the adjacent provincial park where more surveys have been completed. A Section 219 conservation covenant, held by Nature Conservancy of Canada and Habitat Acquisition Trust, was placed on the Nature Reserve in 2000.

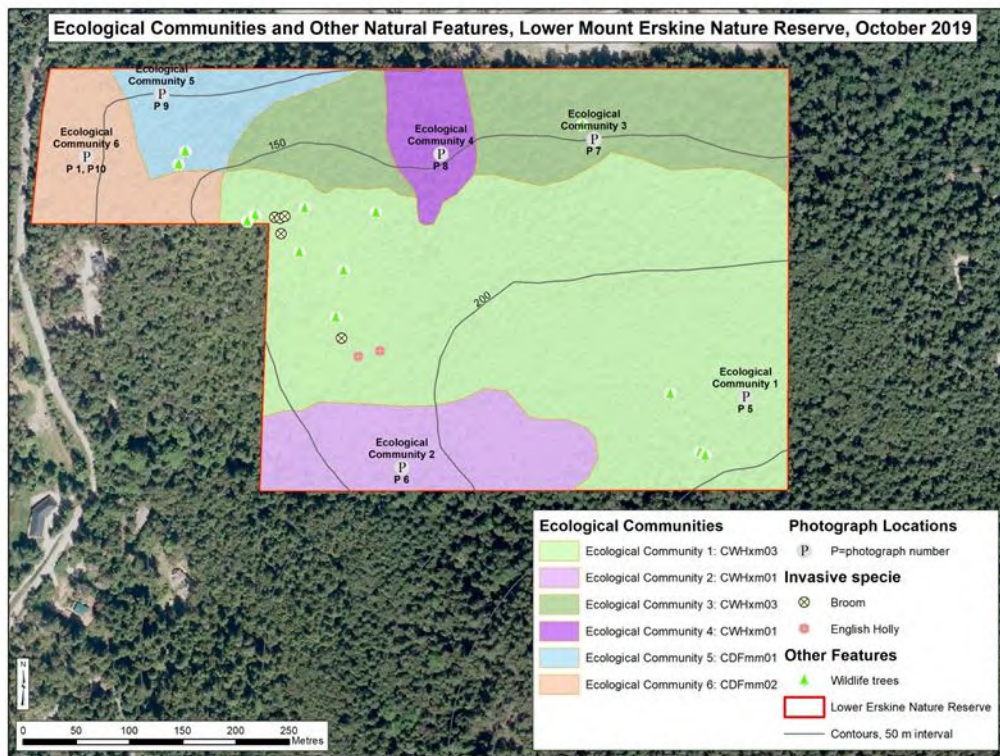




**Figure 1** Location on Salt Spring Island (insert) of Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve and protected areas context

**Table 1** Rare Ecological Communities in Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve and their status.

| Ecological Community Name                                      |                                                                                        | Status     |         |        |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|---------|--------|
| English                                                        | Scientific                                                                             | Provincial | BC List | Global |
| Douglas-fir – western hemlock / salal (CWHxm1/03)              | <i>Pseudotsuga menziesii</i> – <i>Tsuga heterophylla</i> / <i>Gaultheria shallon</i>   | S2 (2019)  | Red     | G3G4   |
| Western hemlock - Douglas-fir / Oregon beaked moss (CWHxm1/01) | <i>Tsuga heterophylla</i> - <i>Pseudotsuga menziesii</i> / <i>Eurhynchium oreganum</i> | S2 (2013)  | Red     | G3G4   |
| Douglas-fir - Dull Oregon-grape (CDFmm/01)                     | <i>Pseudotsuga menziesii</i> – <i>Berberis nervosa</i>                                 | S1 (2018)  | Red     | G2     |
| Douglas-fir / arbutus (CDFmm/02)                               | <i>Pseudotsuga menziesii</i> / <i>Arbutus menziesii</i>                                | S2 (2004)  | Red     | GNR    |



**Figure 2** Ecological Communities in Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve

The initial management plan was approved in 1994 and the first revised plan was done in 2005. In 2019, the management plan was updated by Carrina Maslovat to be consistent with a new template and additional field work was done to complete the ecological descriptions of the property. A draft was provided to the covenant holders, and to Salt Spring Trail and Nature Club who have helped with the trail maintenance in the past, for their input; their edits have been incorporated into the attached management plan and the final management plan will be sent to the covenant holders for approval before being implemented.

Key management recommendations are to manage trail use and maintenance of this heavily used trail, to manage invasive species and to engage with First Nations to develop a Management Plan for Areas of Cultural Heritage, gathering and harvesting species, and Sacred Significance. Further inventories for species at risk would provide a clearer picture of the ecology of the Nature Reserve and guide future management.

ITC will continue to incorporate new information and knowledge sharing of First Nations interests, species-at-risk, invasive species, and management techniques over the course of the lifetime of the plan.

The management objectives for Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve are to:

- Preserve and protect the natural ecosystems, biological diversity and natural values;
- Support ongoing inventory, mapping and monitoring to guide management;
- Allow natural forest succession and natural ecological processes and functions to proceed unimpeded without human intervention, except in the case of wildfire or other exceptional situations where remediation is considered imperative;
- Support and protect continued use of areas of sacred and cultural significance by First Nations as per Section 35 of the Constitution Act<sup>1</sup> and UNDRIP<sup>2</sup>;

<sup>1</sup> Section 35 of the Constitution Act, 1982 recognizes and affirms the inherent rights of Indigenous Peoples.

<sup>2</sup> The United Nations Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples (UNDRIP) is an international instrument adopted by the United Nations on September 13, 2007, to enshrine (according to Article 43) the rights that “constitute the minimum standards for the survival, dignity and well-being of the indigenous peoples of the world.” The UNDRIP protects collective rights that may not be addressed in other human rights charters that emphasize individual rights, and it also safeguards the individual rights of Indigenous people. Canada signed in 2010.

- Remove invasive species throughout the Nature Reserve where they compromise natural values; and
- Allow for low impact use of the Nature Reserve for hiking, nature appreciation and similar activities provided it does not significantly impair the natural condition of the Nature Reserve.

**Immediate Actions proposed for the next 1-2 years:**

1. Support all partners, contractors and volunteers to complete cultural competency training in regard to reconciliation, knowledge and history of Coast Salish and Indigenous Peoples.
2. Engage with First Nations to ensure that the management plan is reflective of treaty, inherent rights, and the territories of each Nation.
3. Work in collaboration towards a Management Plan for Areas of Cultural Heritage, gathering and harvesting, and Sacred Significance with First Nations.
4. Install signage at the western boundary of the unauthorized trail to limit further use onto private property.
5. Replace trail markers that have damaged trees with a lower impact system for trail marking. Non-toxic, high visibility orange paint applied with a diamond stencil has been used effectively in other Nature Reserves as wayfinding markers. Markers should be installed in both directions along the trail.
6. Monitor trail conditions on Jack Fisher trail and implement a trail maintenance program.
7. Remove non-native Scotch broom and English holly from the Nature Reserve before these invasive plants become more established.

**Short Term Actions proposed for the next 3-5 years:**

1. Identify opportunities for cooperative management with First Nations.
2. Conduct a fire risk analysis that mitigates the threat of wildfire in the Nature Reserve, particularly human-source fires, and reduces the impact of a wildfire, while also considering the forest ecology.
3. Develop and implement a trail decommissioning and restoration plan for the unofficial trail in the western portion of the Nature Reserve where it is within Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve.

**Long Term Actions proposed for the next 5+ years:**

1. Conduct surveys for species at risk and other wildlife (e.g. birds, amphibians, bats) to provide a better understanding of the natural values of the Nature Reserve.
2. Monitor trail restoration work if implemented.

**Ongoing or Annual Actions proposed:**

1. Conduct annual monitoring to identify management concerns, including off-trail public use, invasive species, use by mountain bikes, installation of fairy doors and off-leash dogs.
2. Conduct ongoing maintenance of signs.
3. Continue to inform the general public of the natural values of the site and the permitted and prohibited uses through information placed in local publications.

### **3 IMPLICATIONS OF RECOMMENDATION**

**ORGANIZATIONAL:** This management plan will guide the management of this property and assist staff in budgeting property management funds over the next 10 years.

**FINANCIAL:** The property management budget is allocated each year depending on available funds and the work that is most needed, balanced between all ITC properties. The primary management costs for the Nature Reserve will be the continuation of invasive species removal and trail upkeep. Resources will also be required to engage with First Nations toward cooperative management, conduct climate change research and coordinate species at risk surveys.

**POLICY:** Consistent with policy.



**IMPLEMENTATION/COMMUNICATIONS:** Staff will provide the Board-approved version of the management plan to the covenant holders, Nature Conservancy of Canada and Habitat Acquisition Trust, for their final approval. Once approved by all parties, the management plan will be posted to the ITC website. ITC contractors and conservation partners working within the Nature Reserve will be provided with the management plan.

**FIRST NATIONS:** ITC staff sent letters to First Nations listed in the First Nations Consultative Areas Database for Salt Spring Island. There has been no response to date, but this management plan is intended to be a living document and ITC staff will work to engage and receive management input from the First Nations with traditional territory on Salt Spring Island at any time. ITC is just beginning engagement with First Nations in the Islands Trust Area and is developing ways to obtain engagement funding. Over the 10-year timeframe of this revised management plan, ITC will work more closely with First Nations to build trust through in-person meetings and development of a Management Plan for Areas of Cultural Heritage and Sacred Significance.

**CLIMATE CHANGE:** The future impacts of climate change on the Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve are unknown, although a summer drying trend and an increase in both frequency and intensity of storm events are predicted. More powerful storms may cause increasing erosion, especially in areas with exposed soil, such as trails. The regular monitoring program recommended in the management plan will ensure timely attention to trail damage and public safety concerns. Climate change may impact the distribution of ecosystems across the landscape, affecting vegetation patterns, hydrology, and may encourage the outbreaks of pests. Trends that may prevail in this region include upslope migration of tree lines and ecosystem boundaries, and increased fire frequency. Ongoing protection of Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve will facilitate the south-to-north and low-to-high-elevation shifts in ecological communities that are predicted with climate change.

**OTHER:** None.

4 **RELEVANT POLICY(S):** [ITC 2.3 - Acquisition and Management of Land](#)

5 **ATTACHMENT(S):**

- Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve Management Plan

---

#### **RESPONSE OPTIONS**

**Recommendation:** That the Islands Trust Conservancy Board approve the 2020 update of the Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve Management Plan dated December 14, 2020.

**Alternative:** That the Islands Trust Conservancy Board approve the Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve Management Plan as amended.

---

**Prepared By:** Nuala Murphy, Property Management Specialist

**Reviewed By/Date:** Kate Emmings, Manager, Islands Trust Conservancy / January 18, 2021

[Type here]

**Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve  
Property Management Plan  
Salt Spring Island, BC**



***Photo 1. Maturing second growth forest with arbutus trees in Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve, Salt Spring Island. Photo: C. Maslovat***

Prepared for:  
Islands Trust Conservancy



Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve Management Plan  
Prepared by Joel Ussery, February 1994  
Revised: January 2005 by Chris Ferris  
REVISED January 2020 by: Carrina Maslovat, R. P. Bio. #1407

APPROVED BY  
Islands Trust Conservancy Board on **DATE**, Resolution #  
Nature Conservancy of Canada **DATE** and the Habitat Acquisition Trust **DATE**

## i. Executive Summary

Islands Trust Conservancy acknowledges and respects that Salt Spring Island is within the territory of Coast Salish Peoples, the Cowichan Tribes, Halalt First Nation, Lyackson First Nation, MÁLEXEL (Malahat) Nation, BOKEĆEN (Pauquachin) First Nation, Penelakut Tribe, SEMYOME (Semiahmoo) First Nation, Stz'uminus (Chemainus) First Nation, WJOŁELP (Tsartlip) First Nation, SŖÁUTW (Tsawout) First Nation, Tsawwassen First Nation, WSIKEM (Tseycum) First Nation, Ts'uubaa-asatx (Lake Cowichan) First Nation. The historical relationship to the land, culture, and spirit of this place continues to this day. Islands Trust Conservancy is committed to honouring the rich history of Indigenous stewardship in the lands and waters of the Islands Trust Area and to building mutually respectful relationships between Indigenous and non-Indigenous partners in conservation. Therefore, this Management Plan for Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve is a living document that will evolve as opportunities for knowledge sharing arise and understanding grows<sup>1</sup>.

The Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve was donated to the Province of British Columbia in 1976 as a park and greenbelt by Dr. J.H. Fisher and in 1996, the title to the Reserve was transferred to the Islands Trust Conservancy. The initial management plan was prepared in 1994 by Joel Ussery and revised by Chris Ferris in 2005. In 2019, the management plan was updated with additional field work undertaken by Carrina Maslovat.

Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve is located on the northwest slopes of Mount Erskine between Booth Bay and Erskine Point on the northwestern part of Salt Spring Island. The Reserve consists of a steeply sloping forested area with rocky bluffs and outcroppings. The elevation ranges from 60 metres to 250 metres. The area has been logged and is now maturing young forest, primarily Douglas-fir, but in drier areas with thinner soils there are large amounts of arbutus. The Reserve is a popular hiking destination and there is a well-used trail network that leads to the summit of Mount Erskine in the adjacent provincial park. Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve (22.46 hectares or 55.57 acres) along with the adjacent Mount Erskine Provincial Park and Manzanita Ridge Nature Reserve are an important, large, contiguous natural area measuring 150 hectares (372 acres) in the Coastal Douglas-fir (CDFmm) and Coastal Western Hemlock (CWHxm) biogeoclimatic zones.

Key management recommendations are trail monitoring and maintenance, restoration to a more nature state where unofficial trails now exist, removal of invasive species, maintenance of signage, and development of a wildfire management plan. Further inventories for species at risk would provide a clearer picture of the ecology of the Reserve and guide future management.

---

<sup>1</sup> First Nations/reconciliation content written by Lisa Wilcox, Islands Trust

## ii. Tables and Lists

### Table of Contents

|                                                                                          |           |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| <b>i. Executive Summary.....</b>                                                         | <b>2</b>  |
| <b>ii. Tables and Lists.....</b>                                                         | <b>3</b>  |
| <b>iii. Acknowledgements.....</b>                                                        | <b>7</b>  |
| <b>1.0 Introduction.....</b>                                                             | <b>8</b>  |
| 1.1 Islands Trust Conservancy.....                                                       | 8         |
| 1.2 Purpose of Islands Trust Conservancy Management Plans.....                           | 9         |
| 1.3 Scope of Islands Trust Conservancy Management Plans.....                             | 9         |
| 1.4 Protected Area Purpose.....                                                          | 10        |
| 1.5 Protected Area Objectives .....                                                      | 10        |
| <b>2.0 Property Information .....</b>                                                    | <b>10</b> |
| 2.1 Location.....                                                                        | 10        |
| 2.2 Legal description.....                                                               | 11        |
| 2.3 Legal Access .....                                                                   | 11        |
| 2.4 Landscape Context.....                                                               | 11        |
| 2.5 Site History.....                                                                    | 12        |
| 2.6 Anthropogenic Features .....                                                         | 13        |
| 2.7 Undersurface Rights.....                                                             | 16        |
| 2.8 Notations, Charges, Liens and Interests.....                                         | 16        |
| 2.9 Local Planning Designations .....                                                    | 16        |
| 2.10 Existing Public and Other Use .....                                                 | 16        |
| <b>3.0 Inventory by Ecological Community.....</b>                                        | <b>17</b> |
| 3.1 Ecological Significance.....                                                         | 17        |
| 3.2 Climate .....                                                                        | 18        |
| 3.3 Geology and Physiology .....                                                         | 19        |
| 3.4 Hydrology .....                                                                      | 19        |
| 3.5 Soils.....                                                                           | 20        |
| 3.6 Ecological Classifications.....                                                      | 20        |
| 3.7 Ecological Communities and Site Series .....                                         | 21        |
| Ecological Community 1: Douglas-fir- western hemlock / salal (CWHxm03) .....             | 22        |
| Ecological Community 2: Western hemlock- Douglas-fir / Oregon beaked moss (CWHxm01)..... | 25        |

|                                                                                              |           |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| Ecological Community 3: Douglas-fir- western hemlock / salal (CWHxm03) .....                 | 28        |
| Ecological Community 4: Western hemlock- Douglas-fir / Oregon beaked moss (CWHxm01).....     | 31        |
| Ecological Community 5: Douglas-fir / dull Oregon-grape (CDFmm01) .....                      | 34        |
| Ecological Community 6: Douglas-fir / Arbutus (CDFmm02) .....                                | 37        |
| 3.8 Wildlife Species.....                                                                    | 40        |
| 3.9 Expected Change Over Time.....                                                           | 41        |
| <b>4.0 Threats .....</b>                                                                     | <b>41</b> |
| 4.1 Expected Change to Threats Over Time .....                                               | 42        |
| <b>5.0 Community Engagement.....</b>                                                         | <b>42</b> |
| 5.1 Adjacent Landholders.....                                                                | 42        |
| 5.2 First Nations .....                                                                      | 42        |
| 5.3 Conservation Partners and Community Members .....                                        | 43        |
| 5.4 Engagement Results.....                                                                  | 43        |
| <b>6.0 Management Recommendations .....</b>                                                  | <b>43</b> |
| 6.1 Management Roles .....                                                                   | 43        |
| 6.2 Permitted and Prohibited Uses .....                                                      | 44        |
| 6.3 Proposed Monitoring Program .....                                                        | 44        |
| 6.4 Public Access .....                                                                      | 45        |
| 6.5 Signage .....                                                                            | 45        |
| 6.6 Trail Use, Maintenance and Development .....                                             | 46        |
| 6.7 Protection Initiatives for Sensitive Ecosystems and Species and Ecosystems at Risk ..... | 47        |
| 6.8 Ecological Restoration Options .....                                                     | 47        |
| 6.9 Scientific Research/Education Opportunities.....                                         | 48        |
| 6.10 Exotic and Invasive Species Management .....                                            | 48        |
| 6.11 Wildfire Risk Management .....                                                          | 49        |
| 6.12 Climate Change Impacts and Management .....                                             | 49        |
| <b>7.0 Action Items .....</b>                                                                | <b>50</b> |
| 7.1 Immediate Actions (1-2 years).....                                                       | 50        |
| 7.2 Short term Actions (3-5 years).....                                                      | 50        |
| 7.3 Long term Actions (5+ years).....                                                        | 51        |
| 7.4 Ongoing or Annual Action Items .....                                                     | 51        |
| <b>8.0 Conclusion .....</b>                                                                  | <b>51</b> |
| <b>9.0 References .....</b>                                                                  | <b>52</b> |
| <b>10.0 Appendices .....</b>                                                                 | <b>55</b> |



## List of Figures

|                                                                                                                                                                              |    |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Figure 1. Location of Salt Spring Island (inset), and protected areas context surrounding Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve (reserve purple with cross-hatch). .....        | 12 |
| Figure 2. Anthropogenic features including trails and signs in Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve. ....                                                                      | 15 |
| Figure 3. Canadian climate normals for temperature and precipitation at Saint Mary's Lake weather station, British Columbia from 1981-2018 (Government of Canada 2019). .... | 19 |
| Figure 4. Ecological Communities in Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve with wildlife trees, photopoint locations, and ecological community plots. ....                       | 21 |

## List of Tables

|                                                                                                                                                         |    |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Table 1. The primary author and other contributors to the management plan, and their contributions, affiliations, and professional qualifications. .... | 7  |
| Table 2. Anthropogenic features in Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve. ....                                                                             | 13 |
| Table 3. Ecological Communities in Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve. ....                                                                             | 18 |
| Table 4. Description of Ecological Community 1. ....                                                                                                    | 23 |
| Table 5. Vegetation Species in Ecological Community 1. ....                                                                                             | 24 |
| Table 6. Description of Ecological Community 2. ....                                                                                                    | 26 |
| Table 7. Vegetation Species in Ecological Community 2. ....                                                                                             | 27 |
| Table 8. Description of Ecological Community 3. ....                                                                                                    | 29 |
| Table 9. Vegetation Species in Ecological Community 3. ....                                                                                             | 30 |
| Table 10. Description of Ecological Community 4. ....                                                                                                   | 32 |
| Table 11. Vegetation Species in Ecological Community 4. ....                                                                                            | 33 |
| Table 12. Description of Ecological Community 5. ....                                                                                                   | 35 |
| Table 13. Vegetation Species in Ecological Community 5. ....                                                                                            | 36 |
| Table 14. Description of Ecological Community 6. ....                                                                                                   | 38 |
| Table 15. Vegetation Species in Ecological Community 6. ....                                                                                            | 39 |
| Table 16. Wildlife Species Observed in Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve during 2019 Field Work. ....                                                  | 40 |
| Table 17. Threats to Natural Values in Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve. ....                                                                         | 41 |
| Table 18. Partners involved in management of MANR. ....                                                                                                 | 44 |

## List of Photos

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |    |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Photo 1. Maturing second growth forest with arbutus trees in Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve, Salt Spring Island. Photo: C. Maslovat .....                                                                    | 1  |
| Photo 2. Collins Road trailhead signs and beginning of trail. Photo: C. Maslovat .....                                                                                                                           | 13 |
| Photo 3. BC Parks boundary sign where trail crosses the southern boundary. Photo: L. Matthias .....                                                                                                              | 14 |
| Photo 4. On the Jack Fisher trail, Carrina points to a small reflective trail marker that is starting to have tree bark growing around it. Photo: L. Matthias .....                                              | 15 |
| Photo 5. Ecological Community 1 with dense stand of pole/sapling aged Douglas-fir trees. Photo: L. Matthias.....                                                                                                 | 22 |
| Photo 6. Ecological community 2 showing steeply sloping bank with bigleaf maple in middle, arbutus at right and sparse understory vegetation with abundant leaf litter and woody debris. Photo: L. Matthias..... | 25 |
| Photo 7. Ecological community 3 showing dense stand of young forest with Douglas-fir and arbutus and sparse understory. Photo: L. Matthias .....                                                                 | 28 |
| Photo 8. Ecological community 4 which includes the banks and bottom of a steep gully in the north central part of the reserve. Photo: L. Matthias .....                                                          | 31 |
| Photo 9. Ecological Community 5 showing mixed Douglas-fir and arbutus with patches of dense salal in understory. Photo: C. Maslovat.....                                                                         | 34 |
| Photo 10. Ecological Community 6 with mixed young Douglas-fir and arbutus and much exposed rock. Photo: C. Maslovat.....                                                                                         | 37 |
| Photo 11. Large diameter Douglas-fir wildlife tree with many cavities. Photo: L. Matthias .....                                                                                                                  | 40 |
| Photo 12. Unauthorized trail along old logging road to privately-managed property to the north. Photo: L. Matthias.....                                                                                          | 45 |
| Photo 13. Islands Trust Conservancy nature reserve boundary sign on the northern property boundary. Photo: C. Maslovat .....                                                                                     | 45 |
| Photo 14. Well-worn trail showing erosion next to tree roots. Photo: L. Matthias.....                                                                                                                            | 46 |
| Photo 15. Trail braiding on the Jack Fisher trail. Photo: L. Matthias.....                                                                                                                                       | 46 |
| Photo 16. Trampled area at lookout with no native vegetation remaining. Photo: L. Matthias .                                                                                                                     | 47 |
| Photo 17. Small English Holly plant next to trail that has re-sprouted after being cut. Photo: L. Matthias.....                                                                                                  | 48 |
| Photo 18. Young Scotch broom on thin soil rock outcrop next to trail. Photo: L. Matthias .....                                                                                                                   | 48 |
| Photo 19. Small dead western redcedar trees in shallow soils at right and left of photo. Photo: L. Matthias .....                                                                                                | 50 |

## List of Appendices

|                                                                          |    |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Appendix A. Vegetation found in Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve. .... | 55 |
| Appendix B. Photographic Documentation. ....                             | 57 |
| Appendix C. Letter to Neighbours. ....                                   | 59 |
| Appendix D. Questionnaire sent to Neighbours and Available Online.....   | 61 |
| Appendix E. Letter to First Nations. ....                                | 63 |

### iii. Acknowledgements

**Table 1. The primary author and other contributors to the management plan, and their contributions, affiliations, and professional qualifications.**

| Name             | Position/Affiliation                                            | Professional Accreditation or subject expertise | Contribution                                           |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| Carrina Maslovat | Botanist/Contractor                                             | R.P. Bio.                                       | Primary author, field data collection                  |
| Laura Matthias   | Species at Risk Biologist/Subcontractor                         |                                                 | Assistance with field data collection                  |
| Lisa Wilcox      | Senior Intergovernmental Policy Advisor                         | B.A. Psychology, Indigenous Knowledge Holder    | Reconciliation/Indigenous Knowledge Holder and editing |
| Jemma Green      | Acting Property Management Specialist/Islands Trust Conservancy |                                                 | Background information and mapping, local contacts     |
| Nuala Murphy     | Property Management Specialist/Islands Trust Conservancy        |                                                 | Background information, document review                |
| Joel Ussery      | Biologist/Contractor                                            |                                                 | Author of management plan (1994)                       |
| Chris Ferris     | Biologist/Contractor                                            |                                                 | Author of revised management plan (2005)               |

## 1.0 Introduction

Salt Spring Island is situated within the territory of the Coast Salish Peoples, who share a rich history of stewardship in the lands and waters of the Islands Trust Area that inspires the work of Islands Trust Conservancy and its partners. The Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve was established in 1996 thanks to the donation of the land by Dr. J.H. Fisher who wanted to see the land preserved as park and greenbelt land.

The initial management plan, written by Joel Ussery, was approved by the Islands Trust Conservancy Board in February 1994. The plan was revised in January 2005 by Chris Ferris and approved on March 29<sup>th</sup>, 2005. In 2019, the management plan was updated by Carrina Maslovat to be consistent with a new template and additional field work was done to complete the ecological descriptions of the property.

### 1.1 Islands Trust Conservancy

Since time immemorial, the lands and waters between Vancouver Island and mainland British Columbia have been home to the Coast Salish People, whose ecological, cultural, and spiritual connections to this place continue to this day. In 1974, the Province of British Columbia recognized the islands between Vancouver Island and the mainland as a special place within the province where the unique beauty, rural character and diverse ecosystems should be protected for future generations. Through the Islands Trust Act, the province established the Islands Trust, a local government, with the following mandate (known as the Object of the Islands Trust):

*To preserve and protect the trust area and its unique amenities and environment for the benefit of the residents of the trust area and of British Columbia generally, in cooperation with municipalities, regional districts, improvement districts, other persons and organizations and the government of British Columbia. (Islands Trust 2019a)*

In 1990, through the enactment of a section of the Islands Trust Act, the Islands Trust Conservancy (originally called the Islands Trust Fund) was established as a conservation land trust to assist in carrying out the “preserve and protect” mandate. Part 6 of the Islands Trust Act establishes the corporate status, responsibilities, and governance structure of the Islands Trust Conservancy. The Islands Trust Conservancy is one of sixteen corporate entities<sup>2</sup> charged to uphold the Object of the Islands Trust and since 1990 has protected over 1,300 hectares (3,220 acres) of land as nature reserves and conservation covenants.

The vision of the Islands Trust Conservancy is that the islands and waters of the Strait of Georgia and Howe Sound will be a vibrant tapestry of culture and ecology where humans live and work in harmony with the natural world. This special place will have a network of protected areas that preserve in perpetuity the native species and natural systems of the islands. Engaged residents and conservation partners will work together to protect large natural areas and key wildlife habitat. Viable ecosystems will flourish alongside healthy island communities.

---

<sup>2</sup> The corporate entities charged to uphold the Object of the Islands Trust are the Trust Council, the Executive Committee, twelve local trust committees, one island municipality and the Islands Trust Conservancy Board.

The mission of the Islands Trust Conservancy is to protect special places by encouraging, undertaking and assisting in voluntary conservation initiatives within the Islands Trust Area. Islands Trust Conservancy nature reserves are managed to maintain, preserve and protect the natural features and values of ecosystems.

### 1.2 Purpose of Islands Trust Conservancy Management Plans

ITC management plans provide background information and set out the direction of property management as follows:

- Provide general and descriptive information on the property, including location, history, and land use.
- Set out the conservation goals and objectives for the property.
- Identify the property's ecological and/or cultural values and features.
- Describe the management issues associated with the property.
- Provide short, medium and long-term management recommendations (action items or tasks) on issues such as: species at risk protection; ecological restoration; public access; educational and research opportunities; invasive species management; and signage needs.
- Preserve and protect cultural, spiritual, and sacred locations.

Once the management plan process is complete, the ITC will work to carry out the management actions or strategies identified in the plan, as resources allow. Following general practice and as outlined in the conservation covenant and statutory right of way, the ITC will revise the Management Plan every ten years.

### 1.3 Scope of Islands Trust Conservancy Management Plans

Consistent with the Islands Trust Reconciliation Declaration (Islands Trust 2019), ITC recognizes that nature reserves may be places of great cultural and spiritual significance to First Nations. Cooperative management of these protected places will provide opportunities to establish and maintain mutually respectful relationships between Islands Trust Conservancy and First Nations, as well as upholding the guiding principles of United Nations Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples (UNDRIP)<sup>3</sup> and the Truth and Reconciliation (TRC) Calls to Action. Relationship-building, knowledge-sharing, healing, and establishment of trust takes time. Islands Trust Conservancy is committed to developing a parallel *Management Plan for Areas of Cultural Heritage and Sacred Significance*. This parallel Management Plan sets out guiding principles for cooperative collaboration between ITC and First Nations with traditional and treaty territories and cultural interests in the area defined by one or more nature reserves. Moreover, the Management Plan defines the common vision, objectives, policies, and best

---

<sup>3</sup> The United Nations Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples (UNDRIP) is an international instrument adopted by the United Nations on September 13, 2007, to enshrine (according to Article 43) the rights that “constitute the minimum standards for the survival, dignity and well-being of the indigenous peoples of the world.” The UNDRIP protects collective rights that may not be addressed in other human rights charters that emphasize individual rights, and it also safeguards the individual rights of Indigenous people. Canada signed in 2010.



management practices for the nature reserve(s) to ensure that its natural values and cultural heritage and sacred significance are maintained for future generations.

### 1.4 Protected Area Purpose

The purpose of the Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve is to preserve and protect the representative natural ecosystems and natural values of the site (including any rare and endangered plant and animal species), and to maintain the biodiversity of the site for the benefit of the flora and fauna of the Reserve, the residents of the island, and the province generally. The Reserve will also provide hiking trails for low impact recreation opportunities and trail access to the summit of Mount Erskine in the adjacent Mount Erskine Provincial Park and the connecting Manzanita Ridge Nature Reserve. The site is to be protected in accordance with the objectives of the Islands Trust Conservancy and the mandate of the Islands Trust.

### 1.5 Protected Area Objectives

The objectives for Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve are to:

- Preserve and protect the natural ecosystems, biological diversity and natural values;
- Support ongoing inventory, mapping and monitoring to guide management;
- Allow natural forest succession and natural ecological processes and functions to proceed unimpeded without human intervention, except in the case of wildfire or other exceptional situations where remediation is considered imperative;
- Support and protect continued use of areas of sacred and cultural significance by First Nations as per Section 35 of the Constitution Act<sup>4</sup> and UNDRIP;
- Remove invasive species throughout the Reserve where they compromise natural values; and
- Allow for low impact use of the Reserve for hiking, nature appreciation and similar activities provided it does not significantly impair the natural condition of the Reserve.

## 2.0 Property Information

The Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve is 22.46 hectares (55.57 acres) in size with a range in elevation from 60 to 250 metres.

### 2.1 Location

Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve is located on the northwest slopes of Mount Erskine between Booth Bay and Erskine Point on the northwestern part of Salt Spring Island (Figure 1).

Salt Spring Island can be accessed by ferries from Swartz Bay, Tsawwassen and Crofton. From Ganges take Rainbow Road and travel 4.2 kilometres to the west until the road curves to the south and becomes Collins Road. Travel south on Collins Road for 350 metres and there is a parking pullout on the right (west) side of the road. The Jack Fisher trail is on the left (east) side of the road and can be accessed south of the parking area on Collins Road. Collins Road forms the western boundary of the northern part of the Reserve.

---

<sup>4</sup> Section 35 of the Constitution Act, 1982 recognizes and affirms the inherent rights of Indigenous Peoples.

## 2.2 Legal description

The Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve is legally described as PID: 001-384-333, Lot 3, Section 2, Range 1 and 2 West, North Salt Spring Island, Cowichan District, Plan 29481.

## 2.3 Legal Access

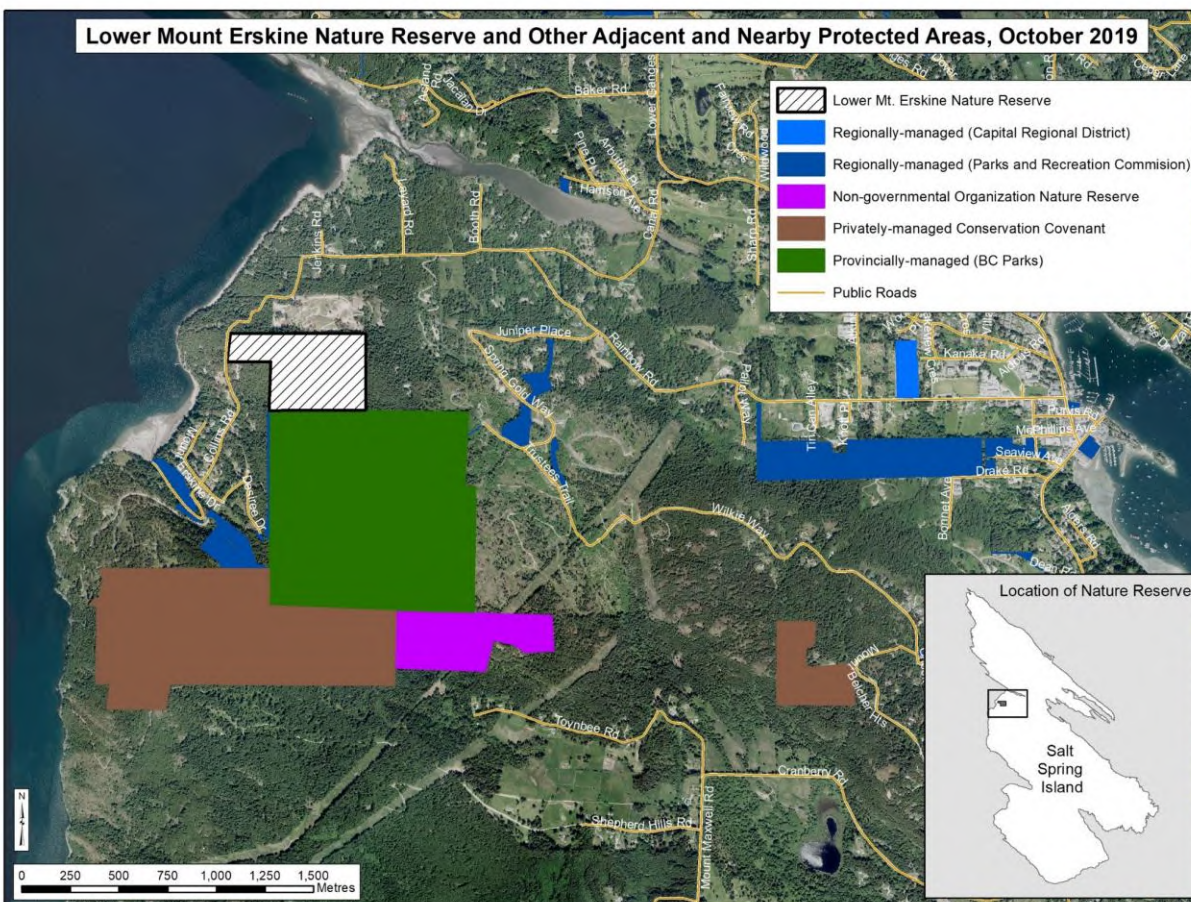
Legal access to the Reserve is from the western part of the Reserve that abuts Collins Road. The Reserve can also be accessed via connecting hiking trails from the south in Mt. Erskine Provincial Park.

## 2.4 Landscape Context

Salt Spring Island is located in the Georgia Strait and is one of the many islands governed by the Islands Trust (see map in Figure 1 for location and protected area context). The Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve is located on the northwest slopes of Mount Erskine.

Mount Erskine Provincial Park (managed by BC Parks) includes three large lots to the south of the Reserve totaling 107 hectares (264 acres). Along the southern boundary in the eastern part of the provincial park is the 20 hectare (50 acre) Manzanita Ridge Nature Reserve which is managed by the Salt Spring Island Conservancy. On the southwest corner of Lower Mount Erskine Regional Park, there is a small 0.6 hectare (1.5 acre) regionally-managed park that follows the western boundary of the provincial park to Desiree Drive. The total contiguous protected area is 150 hectares (372 acres).

The remainder of the adjacent lots are low density residential. To the north in the eastern portion of the Reserve is a privately-managed 9 hectare (23 acre) lot that was clear cut between 2009 and 2013 (iMap 2019). To the north in the western portion of the Reserve is a 7 hectare (18 acre) privately-managed lot that straddles Collins Road that has been recently developed: since 2017, new roads have been installed west of Collins Road. Along the eastern boundary is a privately-managed 9 hectare (22 acre) lot and in the southwest corner is a 5 hectare (12 acre) lot. There are a number of smaller privately-managed lots further south on Collins Road.



**Figure 1. Location of Salt Spring Island (inset), and protected areas context surrounding Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve.**

## 2.5 Site History

Salt Spring Island is within the treaty and territories of the Coast Salish People. The island has since time immemorial been the homeland and gathering place for First Peoples including the Cowichan Tribes, Halalt First Nation, Lyackson First Nation, MÁLEXEL (Malahat) Nation, BOKEĆEN (Pauquachin) First Nation, Penelakut Tribe, SEMYOME (Semiahmoo) First Nation, Stz'uminus (Chemainus) First Nation, WJOLELP (Tsartlip) First Nation, STÁUTW (Tsawout) First Nation, Tsawwassen First Nation, WSIKEM (Tseycum) First Nation, Ts'uubaa-asatx (Lake Cowichan) First Nation; this rich history and cultural heritage continues to this day.

The Coast Salish peoples maintained a vital, thriving, and sustainable connection to their territory and developed rich cultural, spiritual, and traditional ecological knowledge. However, cultural heritage and sacred sites of Salt Spring Island and the greater Islands Trust Area have been and continue to be negatively impacted by European settlement. Past archeological activities, vandalism, and land use have disturbed sites of cultural and spiritual importance. The land and the greater territory remains an embodiment of the stories, oral history, and culture of these First Nations. There are archaeological artifacts dating back thousands of years on Salt



Spring Island showing a rich history of First Nations settlement. First Nations on Salt Spring Island had permanent village sites, utilizing the lands and waters since time immemorial.

The Reserve is near the Hul'q'umi'num' place name Tatmul. Mount Erskine may have been named for James A. Erskine, an admiral in the Royal Navy or alternatively, in 1863 Captain Richards may have named it after Admiral Elphinstone Erskine, Commander-in-Chief of the North American Squadron (Salt Spring Archives 2019).

The Reserve has been logged, likely more than once and skid roads remain throughout the Reserve. The property was extensively logged approximately 70 years ago and all of the mature Douglas-fir trees were removed (Ferris 2005). Fire scars are present on the larger Douglas-fir trees suggesting a wildfire or perhaps burning after logging.

In 1976, Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve was transferred to the then Ministry of Environment by Dr. Fisher, who was a member of the Salt Spring Trail and Nature Club. In 1996, the Reserve was transferred to the Islands Trust Conservancy.

The first management plan for the Reserve was written in 1994 by Joel Ussery and it was revised in 2005 by Chris Ferris.

## 2.6 Anthropogenic Features

The Jack Fisher hiking trail goes through the Reserve from Collins Road to the summit of Mount Erskine in the adjacent Mount Erskine Provincial Park (Figure 2). It is signed at the Collins Road trailhead with a wooden sign “Jack Fisher Trail (South) Assault Route” attached to a tree. There is also a Nature Conservancy of Canada (NCC) conservation covenant sign, a multi-agency sign requesting people keep their dogs on leash due to habitat for species at risk and a trail map on a wooden post. The NCC sign was replaced in September 2019. There is a separate wooden trail post with an Islands Trust Conservancy sign requesting that visitors stay on the trail.



**Photo 2. Collins Road trailhead signs and beginning of trail.**  
**Photo: C. Maslovat**

There is a BC Parks boundary sign where the trail crosses into Mount Erskine Provincial Park to the south.

**Table 2. Anthropogenic features in Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve.**

| Anthropogenic Feature | Description | Condition | Photopoint Location |
|-----------------------|-------------|-----------|---------------------|
|-----------------------|-------------|-----------|---------------------|

|                             |                                                                                                                                                            |           |                                                       |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| Signs                       | Collins Road trailhead signs- Jack Fisher trail, Islands Trust Conservancy (“stay on trail”), NCC conservation covenant, multi-agency “dogs on leash” sign | Excellent | P2; Figure 2 458984; 5411632                          |
| Boundary sign               | BC Parks boundary sign at south boundary of Mount Erskine Nature Reserve                                                                                   | Good      | P3; Figure 2 459634; 5411314                          |
| Boundary sign               | ITC sign at western boundary next to unauthorized trail loop through privately-managed property.                                                           | Good      | No photo; Figure 2 459216; 5411496                    |
| Boundary sign               | ITC boundary sign on northern boundary next to unauthorized trail on old logging road                                                                      | Good      | P13; Figure 2 459452; 5411723 459443; 5411725         |
| Trail markers               | Small metal reflective markers nailed into trees for wayfinding                                                                                            | Poor      | Photo 4; Figure 2 459117; 5411622                     |
| Jack Fisher trail           | Authorized trail from Collins Road to Mount Erskine Provincial Park                                                                                        | Fair      | P14, P15, P16; Figure 2                               |
| Unauthorized trail loop     | Loop trail through private land from Jack Fisher Trail                                                                                                     | Fair      | No photo; Figure 2 459094; 5411579 to 459216; 5411496 |
| Unauthorized trail to north | Trail on old logging road to northern property boundary                                                                                                    | Good      | P12; Figure 2 459364; 5411492 to 459443; 5411725      |

The Jack Fisher trail route is marked with small diagonal orange metal tags that are nailed into the trees. The trees are beginning to grow around some of the tags. The trail markers are more frequent showing the trail back down to Collins Road than the trail up to Mount Erskine.

There is an unauthorized trail off the Jack Fisher trail to the property to the north that follows an old logging road. The trail appears to receive limited regular use. The northern boundary of the Reserve is signed with two Islands Trust Conservancy boundary signs and the boundary has been flagged and signed with metal covenant boundary stakes.



**Photo 3. BC Parks boundary sign where trail crosses the southern boundary. Photo: L. Matthias**

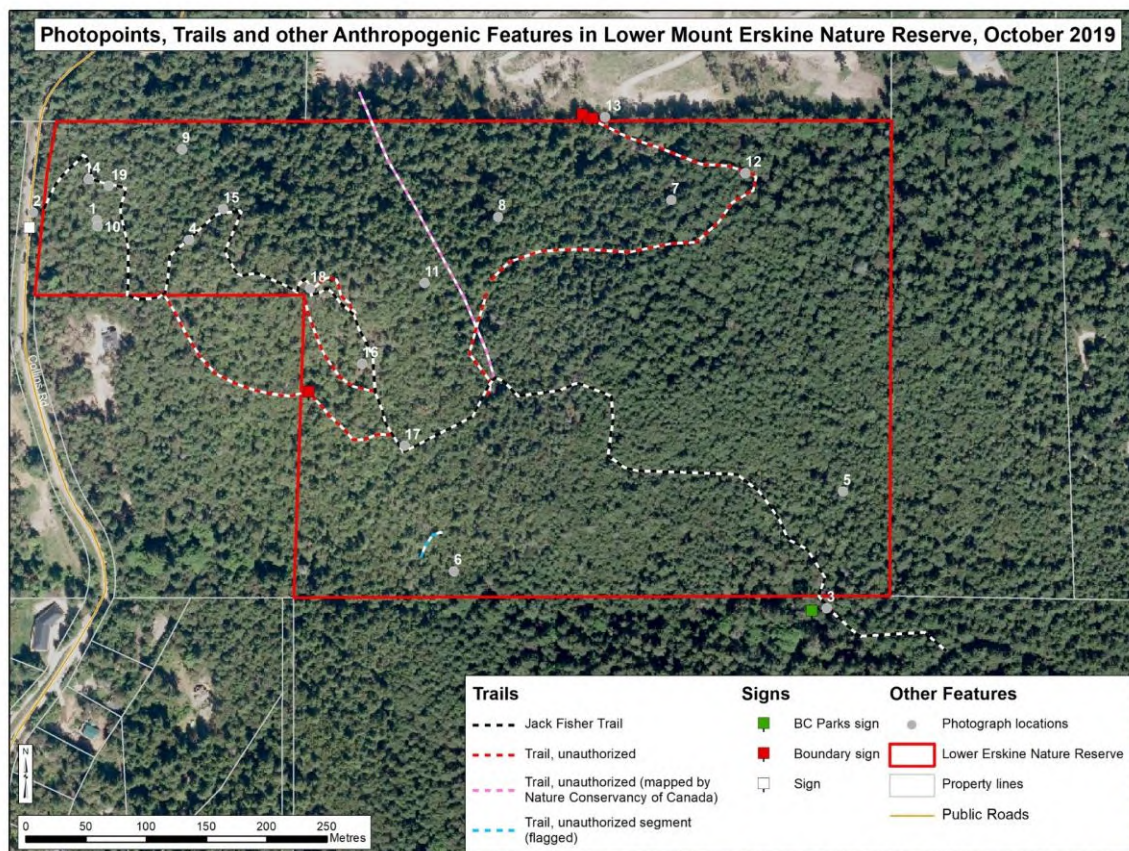


There is a well-used unauthorized trail that leads in a loop from the Jack Fisher trail to privately-managed property to the south in the western part of the Reserve. The boundary of the Reserve is signed where the trail enters the Reserve in the eastern part of the trail but it has not been signed at the western edge of the unauthorized trail.

There is trampling in areas next to viewpoints and desire line trails (shortcuts) and areas of trail widening. There are several old logging skid roads throughout the property that are slowly revegetating due to compaction.



**Photo 4. On the Jack Fisher trail, Carrina points to a small reflective trail marker that is starting to have tree bark growing around it. Photo: L. Matthias**



**Figure 2. Anthropogenic features including trails and signs in Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve.**



At this time ITC has not undertaken archaeological reviews in cooperation with First Nations to complete Traditional Use Studies (TUS), or a Traditional Ecological Knowledge study (TEK) or worked with Cultural Knowledge Holders (CKH) on this Reserve. ITC will work with First Nations to understand the cultural significance of the area and the ecology.

The Archaeological Branch's archaeological potential modelling indicates there are some small areas with high potential to contain unidentified archaeological deposits on the Reserve.

## 2.7 Undersurface Rights

Under Section 47 of the Land Act, the undersurface rights are owned by her Majesty the Queen in right of the province of BC (EK67163). There is also a Possibility of Reverter filed in favour of the province of BC (EK67164).

## 2.8 Notations, Charges, Liens and Interests

There is a Section 219 Covenant (EP081041) and Section 218 Statutory Right of Way (EP081042) registered on the land in favour of Nature Conservancy of Canada and Victoria Natural History Society (VNHS) Habitat Acquisition Trust Foundation (now the Habitat Acquisition Trust).

There is a Right of Way (394758G) which was registered in 1970 in favour of the BC Hydro and Power Authority over the part formerly Section 2, Range 2, West Inter Alia.

## 2.9 Local Planning Designations

The Reserve is zoned PR5 (Park and Recreation) (Islands Trust 2019b). The primary objective of this designation is to preserve and protect the natural environment of the island's public recreational lands and park land while providing for local and regional recreation needs (Islands Trust 2008).

There are no Development Permit Areas designated in the Reserve (Islands Trust 2019b).

## 2.10 Existing Public and Other Use

Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve falls within the territory of multiple First Nations, and as such has been a site of cultural activity and use for thousands of years. There is knowledge and oral history relating to this site that may or may not be shared outside of the membership of a First Nation. As a first step toward strengthening cultural connections to the land that were negatively impacted by European settlement, ITC is exploring the potential of a *Management Plan for Areas of Cultural Heritage and Sacred Significance* that will support and enhance the continued use of the site by First Nations.

The Jack Fisher trail receives regular use by hikers who use the trail to access Mount Erskine in the adjacent provincial park. There are well travelled side trails that connect to the adjacent private property to the south on the western side of the property. There is also a less frequently travelled trail that leads from the Jack Fisher trail to the adjacent privately-managed land in the north.

Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve and the adjacent Mount Erskine Provincial Park are the only large recreational lands within close proximity of Ganges, Vesuvius and the northern portion of the island. The Reserve includes views to the north and there are excellent views from the summit of Mount Erskine to the north and west. The trails were developed and continue to be maintained by the Salt Spring Trail and Nature Club (Ferris 2005).

### 3.0 Inventory by Ecological Community

#### 3.1 Ecological Significance

Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve serves as an important green space and is an important part of a 150 hectare (372 acre) contiguous protected area. Most of the property is forested with dense second or third growth Douglas-fir (*Pseudotsuga menziesii*) forests with very few scattered older trees. Over time, the forest will develop into a more complex stand and, if left undisturbed over the long term, may develop some old growth attributes. There are some mixed forests in wet areas with bigleaf maple (*Acer macrophyllum*) and in drier areas with arbutus (*Arbutus menziesii*). Steep rocky outcrops and mossy bluffs are common and there are no significant hydrological features. The Mount Erskine Nature Reserve ranges in elevation from 60-250 metres, with the highest elevation in the southeastern part of the Reserve. The Reserve is within both the Coastal Douglas-fir moist maritime (CDFmm) and Coastal Western Hemlock very dry (CWHxm) subzones.

The diversity of elevations, aspects, moisture regimes, forest ages and habitat types in the Reserve support a range of plant and animal species. Black-tailed Deer (*Odocoileus hemionus*) sign was noted throughout the Reserve and high levels of herbivory limit the diversity of understory species. Few birds were noted because of the suboptimal survey time.

No species at risk have been documented in the Reserve. The COSEWIC listed Special Concern Common Nighthawk (*Chordeiles minor*) is known to nest in the adjacent Mount Erskine Provincial Park (Ferguson 2019). Although the habitat for nesting is marginal in Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve, the Reserve provides an important buffer for nesting sites. Peregrine Falcon (*Falco peregrinus anatum*) likely nested on the cliff face in the provincial park in 2019 (Ferguson 2019) but there are no suitable cliffs in Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve.

Other species at risk observed in the adjacent provincial park include Batwing Vinyl (*Leptogium platynum*), Leafless Wintergreen (*Pyrola aphylla*), Orobush-seeded Liverwort (*Targionia hypophylla*), Coral Crackers (*Fuscopannaria coralloidea*), Small-flowered Tonella (*Tonella tenella*), and Northern Pygmy-owl (*Glaucidium gnoma swarthi*) (SPI database 2019). Olive-sided Flycatcher (*Contopus cooperi*), Band-tailed Pigeon (*Patagionenas fasciata*) and Purple Martin (*Progne subis*) were observed in the provincial park in 2019 (Ferguson 2019). Further surveys are required to determine if these species also occur in Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve.

The Reserve contains loose talus slopes in small arbutus forest openings with the right aspect to support the Endangered Sharp-tailed Snake (*Contia tenuis*).

**Table 3. Ecological Communities in Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve.**

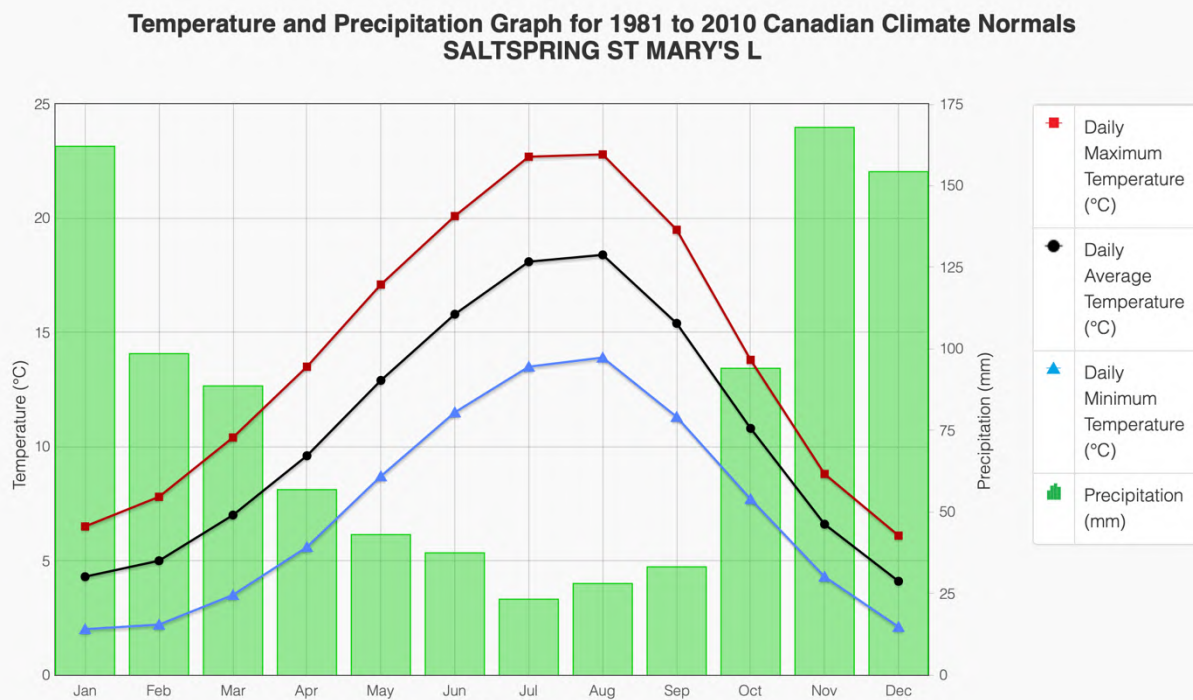
| Ecological Community Name                                      |                                                                                        | Status     |         |        |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|---------|--------|
| English                                                        | Scientific                                                                             | Provincial | BC List | Global |
| Douglas-fir – western hemlock / salal (CWHxm1/03)              | <i>Pseudotsuga menziesii</i> – <i>Tsuga heterophylla</i> / <i>Gaultheria shallon</i>   | S2 (2019)  | Red     | G3G4   |
| Western hemlock - Douglas-fir / Oregon beaked moss (CWHxm1/01) | <i>Tsuga heterophylla</i> - <i>Pseudotsuga menziesii</i> / <i>Eurhynchium oreganum</i> | S2 (2013)  | Red     | G3G4   |
| Douglas-fir - Dull Oregon-grape (CDFmm/01)                     | <i>Pseudotsuga menziesii</i> – <i>Berberis nervosa</i>                                 | S1 (2018)  | Red     | G2     |
| Douglas-fir / arbutus (CDFmm/02)                               | <i>Pseudotsuga menziesii</i> / <i>Arbutus menziesii</i>                                | S2 (2004)  | Red     | GNR    |

Islands Trust Conservancy acknowledges that there is a wealth of traditional ecological knowledge and a long history of ecosystem stewardship among the First Nations whose territory encompasses Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve. ITC will strive to work with First Nations knowledge holders to deepen its understanding, improve its stewardship practices, and, ultimately, support the transfer of traditional ecological knowledge to younger generations within First Nations communities to ensure that it is not lost. At this time, the ecological information presented in this management plan was formed using systems that are based in foundations of Western science.

### 3.2 Climate

The southern Gulf Islands, which includes Salt Spring Island, have a climate pattern of warm, dry summers and mild, wet winters. The maritime influence moderates the effect of elevation, latitude, and aspect on local temperature and precipitation.

The weather statistics for the Saint Mary Lake station show the annual precipitation is approximately 987 millimetres and most of it comes in the form of rain rather than snow (Government of Canada 2019). On Salt Spring Island, average daily temperatures peak in the summer months (July and August) at 18°C and are lowest in the winter (December and January) at 4°C (Figure 2). The reverse is true for precipitation, with the winter months from November to January having the highest rainfall (averaging 143-163 millimetres) and July and August being the driest months (23-28 millimetres) (Government of Canada 2019).



**Figure 3. Canadian climate normals for temperature and precipitation at Saint Mary's Lake weather station, British Columbia from 1981-2018 (Government of Canada 2019).**

The future impacts from climate change are unknown, although a summer drying trend and an increase in storm events are predicted (Mauger et.al. 2015). Drier summers may cause increasing death of western redcedar (*Thuja plicata*), allowing the spread of Douglas-fir (*Pseudotsuga menziesii*). Higher temperatures and less precipitation may lead to localized stress on trees and plants. Maintaining habitat connectivity, biodiversity and ecosystem resilience may assist the flora and fauna adapting to climate change stresses.

### 3.3 Geology and Physiology

The Reserve includes the lower portion of a ridge that rises to the southeast to the summit of Mount Erskine (in Mount Erskine Provincial Park) which is the highest point of land in the northern portion of the island.

Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve ranges in elevation from 60 metres above sea level (asl) at Collins Road (6-15% slope) and then rises steadily and more steeply up to 250 metres asl on the north slope of Mount Erskine.

### 3.4 Hydrology

Most of the Reserve is moisture shedding, lower to mid slope. Water flows primarily to the north to Booth Bay except for the southwest corner of the Reserve which sheds water to the southwest. The southwest corner of the property is noticeably wetter with more deciduous trees such as bigleaf maple. There are no streams or other watercourses on the property. Surface and subsurface runoff collects in hollows and seepage areas at the base of rock faces.

Groundwater recharge may occur through faults and contact zones between rock types in underlying bedrock.

### 3.5 Soils

Mount Erskine is an outcrop of hard, erosion-resistant sedimentary rock primarily composed of conglomerates dating from 80 million years before present (van Vliet et al. 1987). The lower slopes are made up of sandstones and shales. Adjacent valleys have eroded from less resistant mudstones and shales, likely along fault lines. On the slopes, soils have developed from glacial till and rock fall and erosion has exposed bedrock outcroppings. Due to sea level changes after the last glaciation, marine deposits may be found below 100 metres asl.

Four soil types are found in Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve (van Vliet et al. 1987). These soils are moderately to rapidly drained sandy loams. The primary distinction between soil types is the depth of underlying glacial till and the exact character of the bedrock. Soils on lower slopes typically have between 20-50% coarse fragment content and are moist in the winter but subject to summer drought. Soils on upper slopes are very shallow with depth to bedrock of less than 50 centimetres. Rocky outcrops are common throughout the property.

Relatively steep slopes and poorly developed soils reduce the range of uses the property is able to support and the potential for soil erosion is high. The forestry potential for many of the ecological communities is marginal (Blom 1989 in Ferris 2005, Green and Klinka 1994).

Generally, well-drained sandy loams with a coarse fragment content below 50% present little impediment to either concentrated or dispersed recreational use (Block and Hignett 1982 in Ferris 2005). However, steep slopes and a higher percentage of coarse fragments and shallow soil makes trail construction difficult. Vegetation on rock outcrops is susceptible to damage from recreational use, but once vegetation cover is destroyed, these sites can handle high use levels. Vegetation regeneration on rocky outcrops, is slow if not impossible following impact from sustained recreational use.

### 3.6 Ecological Classifications

The Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve occurs within the Coastal Douglas-fir moist maritime (CDFmm) biogeoclimatic subzone at elevations below 150 metres and in the Coastal Western Hemlock very dry maritime subzone (CWHxm) at elevations above 150 metres (Province of British Columbia no date). Vegetation communities are differentiated by available soil moisture, depth, and nutrient status (Green and Klinka 1994). Climatic factors, in conjunction with existing soil conditions, result in a nutrient poor forest with a long growing season, although water deficits may occur on zonal sites. The Reserve is within the Pacific Maritime Ecozone and the Georgia-Puget Basin Ecoregion (Ecological Framework of Canada 2019).

In some locations, there are pockets of densely stocked young Douglas-fir (20-60 years) where the understory shrub and herbaceous growth is inhibited. Where sufficient light is available, the understory is dominated by salal (*Gaultheria shallon*) and dull Oregon-grape (*Berberis nervosa*). In moister areas on the lower slopes, there is western redcedar (*Thuja plicata*), western hemlock (*Tsuga heterophylla*) and bigleaf maple (*Acer macrophyllum*) with small numbers of



sword fern (*Polystichum munitum*). In some places, the western redcedar and western hemlock are well established and were probably released by the selective logging of Douglas-fir.

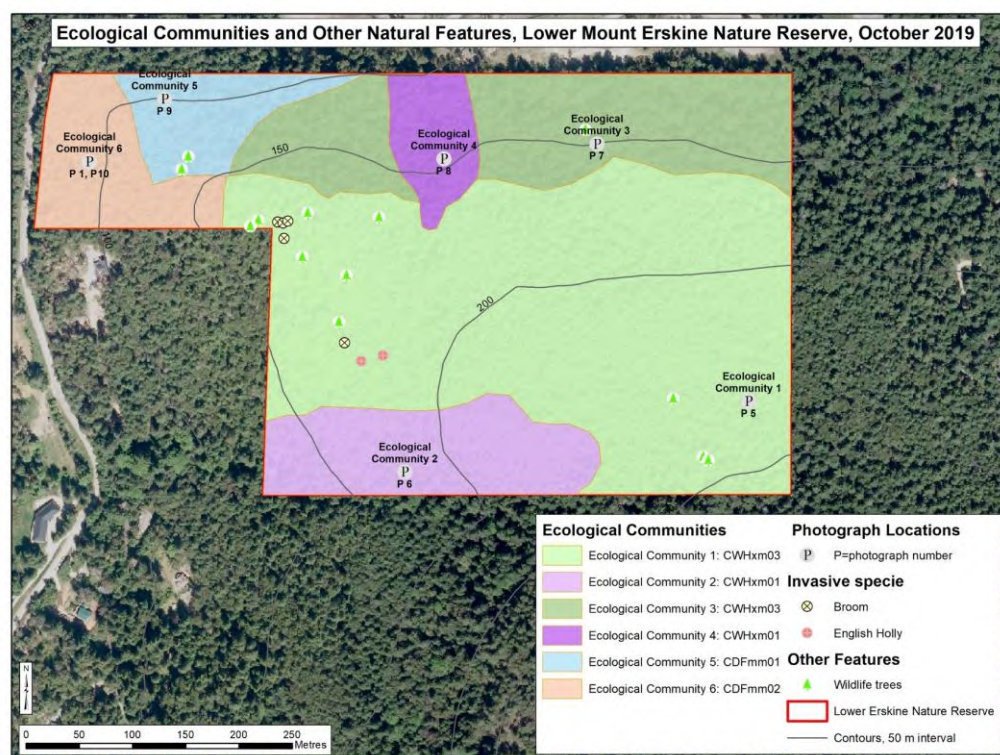
On the rock outcrops and in areas with shallow soil, arbutus (*Arbutus menziesii*) and shore pine (*Pinus contorta* var. *contorta*) are more dominant. The rock outcrops and boulders are covered with mosses and lichens. There are very few older veteran trees.

### 3.7 Ecological Communities and Site Series

The previous management plans for Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve did not delineate ecological communities. Terrestrial Ecosystem Mapping (TEM) identified 9 units, 3 of which include only a small portion of the Reserve (iMap 2019). As part of the 2019 management plan update, ecological descriptions of communities were collected on August 30<sup>th</sup>, September 12<sup>th</sup> and September 19, 2019.

Site series were identified using *A Field Guide for Site Identification and Interpretation for the Vancouver Forest Region* (Green and Klinka 1994) (refer to map in Figure 4). Structural stage was as defined in *Standards for Terrestrial Ecosystems Mapping in British Columbia* (RIC 1998).

A list of all plant species is included in Appendix B. Locations of photopoints and other photograph locations are given in Appendix C.



**Figure 4. Ecological Communities in Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve with wildlife trees, photopoint locations, and ecological community plots.**

### Ecological Community 1: Douglas-fir- western hemlock / salal (CWHxm03)

Ecological Community 1 is found in the southeastern part of the Reserve, mid-slope on the north-facing ridge. The site is dominated by pole-sapling Douglas-fir (20-40 years old) with some larger arbutus (>50 years old). The slope is 30% and the aspect is north facing (10°). The site is dry with poor, shallow soils and there is abundant arbutus leaf litter on the forest floor. The understory is dominated by salal (*Gaultheria shallon*) and mosses. There is a large amount of coarse woody debris on the forest floor and scattered large surface rock and boulders. The elevation reaches 254 metres, so the community is within the Coastal Western Hemlock very dry maritime subzone (CWHxm).



**Photo 5. Ecological Community 1 with dense stand of pole/sapling aged Douglas-fir trees. Photo: L. Matthias**

**Table 4. Description of Ecological Community 1.**

|                                   |                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Polygon ID:                       | Ecological Community 1                                                                                                                                                     |
| Ecological Community:             | Douglas-fir - western hemlock / salal                                                                                                                                      |
| Classification:                   | CWHxm1/03                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Structural Stage:                 | Pole/sapling with some older arbutus                                                                                                                                       |
| Status (BC List):                 | Red-list                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Photopoint(s):                    | P5                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Ecological Community Description: | Dry, well-drained forest with northern exposure, mid-slope on ridge. Pole-sapling Douglas-fir with some older arbutus trees.                                               |
| Disturbance Notes:                | Previously logged with many Douglas-fir stumps that were approximately 40-60 years old when cut. Lots of windfall with approximately 5% coarse woody debris on the ground. |
| Anticipated Change/Succession:    | Increased complexity as forest self-thins allowing more light to understory. There may be a reduction in western redcedar with increasing drought conditions.              |
| Wildlife observations:            | Heard: Northern Flicker ( <i>Colaptes auratus</i> ), Red Squirrel ( <i>Tamiasciurus hudsonicus</i> )                                                                       |

**Table 5. Vegetation Species in Ecological Community 1.**

| VEGETATION SPECIES                                      | PERCENT COVER (%) |                  |             |              |                    |             | NOTES                                                                                |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|------------------|-------------|--------------|--------------------|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                         | Main Canopy       | Secondary Canopy | Shrub Layer | Herb Layer   | Moss, Lichen Layer | Non-natives |                                                                                      |
| <i>Pseudotsuga menziesii</i> (Douglas-fir)              | 20                | 10               |             |              |                    |             | MC: 20-40 yrs, ht: 15-20 m, DBH: 25-40 cm<br>SC: 15-20 yrs, ht: 5-12 m, DBH: 7-21 cm |
| <i>Arbutus menziesii</i> (arbutus <sup>5</sup> )        | 5                 |                  |             |              |                    |             | MC: 60-80 yrs, ht: 10-15 m, DBH: 25-50 cm                                            |
| <i>Pinus contorta</i> var. <i>contorta</i> (shore pine) | 2                 |                  |             |              |                    |             | MC: 30-40 yrs, ht: 12-15 m, DBH: 40 cm                                               |
| <i>Thuja plicata</i> (western redcedar <sup>6</sup> )   | 1                 | 1                |             |              |                    |             | MC: 50 yrs, ht: 15 m, DBH: 55 cm<br>SC: 15-20 yrs, ht: 5 m, DBH: 17 cm               |
| <i>Gaultheria shallon</i> (salal)                       |                   |                  | 20          |              |                    |             |                                                                                      |
| <i>Berberis nervosa</i> (dull Oregon-grape)             |                   |                  | 3           |              |                    |             |                                                                                      |
| <i>Rosa gymnocarpa</i> (baldhip rose)                   |                   |                  | 1           |              |                    |             |                                                                                      |
| <i>Berberis aquifolium</i> (tall Oregon-grape)          |                   |                  | <1          |              |                    |             |                                                                                      |
| <i>Lonicera hispidula</i> (hairy honeysuckle)           |                   |                  | <1          |              |                    |             |                                                                                      |
| <i>Bromus vulgaris</i> (Columbia brome)                 |                   |                  |             | <1           |                    |             |                                                                                      |
| <i>Festuca occidentalis</i> (western fescue)            |                   |                  |             | <1           |                    |             |                                                                                      |
| <i>Goodyera oblongifolia</i> (rattlesnake plantain)     |                   |                  |             | <1           |                    |             |                                                                                      |
| <i>Polypodium glycyrrhiza</i> (licorice fern)           |                   |                  |             | <1           |                    |             |                                                                                      |
| <i>Polystichum munitum</i> (sword fern)                 |                   |                  |             | <1           |                    |             |                                                                                      |
| <b>Moss Layer</b>                                       |                   |                  |             |              |                    |             | <b>Total Moss Layer: 60%</b>                                                         |
| <i>Eurynchium oreganum</i> (Oregon-beaked moss)         |                   |                  |             |              | 40                 |             |                                                                                      |
| <i>Hylocomium splendens</i> (step moss)                 |                   |                  |             |              | 20                 |             |                                                                                      |
| <i>Dicranum</i> sp. (broom moss)                        |                   |                  |             |              | <1                 |             |                                                                                      |
| <i>Isoetecium</i> sp. (isoetecium moss)                 |                   |                  |             |              | <1                 |             |                                                                                      |
| <i>Rhytidiadelphus loreus</i> (lanky moss)              |                   |                  |             |              | <1                 |             |                                                                                      |
| <b>Cover by Layer (%)</b>                               | <b>28</b>         | <b>11</b>        | <b>24</b>   | <b>&lt;1</b> | <b>60</b>          |             | <b>Total Canopy Cover: 39%</b>                                                       |

<sup>5</sup> Culturally significant species<sup>6</sup> Culturally significant species



### Ecological Community 2: Western hemlock- Douglas-fir / Oregon beaked moss (CWHxm01)

Ecological community 2 is in a south-facing, moisture-receiving draw and the moisture-receiving slopes above the draw are found in the southwestern corner of the Reserve. The soils are rapidly draining, shallow and poor in nutrients. The trees are larger than in other parts of the Reserve, in part because of increased moisture conditions but also because not all of the trees were logged as recently. Many of the younger Douglas-fir in the secondary canopy are dead or dying. The understory vegetation is sparse with a small amount of salal and dull Oregon-grape and most of the forest floor (80%) is covered by arbutus leaf litter with some arbutus and bigleaf maple coarse woody debris. The slope is 60% with a southerly aspect (192°). The elevation is 188 metres, so it is within the Coastal Western Hemlock very dry maritime subzone. There are surface boulders and loose rock.



***Photo 6. Ecological Community 2 showing steeply sloping bank with bigleaf maple in middle, arbutus at right and sparse understory vegetation with abundant leaf litter and woody debris. Photo: L. Matthias***



**Table 6. Description of Ecological Community 2.**

|                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Polygon ID:                       | Ecological Community 2                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Ecological Community:             | Western hemlock- Douglas-fir / Oregon beaked moss                                                                                                                                           |
| Classification:                   | CWHxm/01                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Structural Stage:                 | Young forest                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Status (BC List):                 | Red-list                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Photopoint(s):                    | P6                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Ecological Community Description: | Moderately dry, well-drained forest with southern exposure, mid-slope on ridge. Young forest dominated by Douglas-fir and arbutus with western hemlock, bigleaf maple and western redcedar. |
| Disturbance Notes:                | Previously logged with many Douglas-fir stumps, including one larger stump. There are fire scars on the older Douglas-fir and arbutus trees.                                                |
| Anticipated Change/Succession:    | Increased complexity as forest self-thins allowing more light to understory.                                                                                                                |
| Wildlife observations:            | Heard: Red-breasted Nuthatch ( <i>Sitta canadensis</i> )                                                                                                                                    |

**Table 7. Vegetation Species in Ecological Community 2.**

| VEGETATION SPECIES                                                               | PERCENT COVER (%) |           |             |              |                    |             | NOTES                                                                               |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|-----------|-------------|--------------|--------------------|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                                                  | Main Canopy       | Secondary | Shrub Layer | Herb Layer   | Moss, Lichen Layer | Non-natives |                                                                                     |
| <i>Arbutus menziesii</i> (arbutus)                                               | 10                |           |             |              |                    |             | MC: 60-80 yrs, ht: 7-10 m, DBH: 30-55 cm                                            |
| <i>Pseudotsuga menziesii</i> (Douglas-fir)                                       | 8                 | 2         |             |              |                    |             | MC: 100+ yrs, ht: 25 m, DBH: 100 cm<br>SC: 15-20 yrs, ht: 5-10 m, DBH: 7-15 cm      |
| <i>Acer macrophyllum</i> (bigleaf maple)                                         | 5                 | <1        |             |              |                    |             | MC: 80-100 yrs, ht: 15-20 m, DBH: 80-30 cm<br>SC: 5-15 yrs, ht: 3-7 m, DBH: 3-10 cm |
| <i>Thuja plicata</i> (western redcedar)                                          | 3                 | 1         |             |              |                    |             | MC: 40-50 yrs, ht: 15 m, DBH: 55 cm<br>SC: 10-15 yrs, ht: 5 m, DBH: 15 cm           |
| <i>Tsuga heterophylla</i> (western hemlock)                                      | 2                 |           |             |              |                    |             | MC: 60 yrs, ht: 15 m, DBH: 48 cm                                                    |
| <i>Gaultheria shallon</i> (salal)                                                |                   |           | 10          |              |                    |             |                                                                                     |
| <i>Berberis nervosa</i> (dull Oregon-grape)                                      |                   |           | 1           |              |                    |             |                                                                                     |
| <i>Lonicera ciliosa</i> (western trumpet)                                        |                   |           | <1          |              |                    |             |                                                                                     |
| <i>Lonicera hispidula</i> (hairy honeysuckle)                                    |                   |           | <1          |              |                    |             |                                                                                     |
| <i>Rosa gymnocarpa</i> (baldhip rose)                                            |                   |           | <1          |              |                    |             |                                                                                     |
| <i>Polystichum munitum</i> (sword fern)                                          |                   |           |             | <1           |                    |             |                                                                                     |
| <b>Moss Layer</b>                                                                |                   |           |             |              |                    |             | <b>Total Moss Layer: 2%</b>                                                         |
| <i>Eurynchium oregonum</i> (Oregon-beaked moss)-<br>all moss on wood or boulders |                   |           |             |              | 2                  |             |                                                                                     |
| <b>Cover by Layer (%)</b>                                                        | <b>28</b>         | <b>3</b>  | <b>11</b>   | <b>&lt;1</b> | <b>2</b>           |             | <b>Total Canopy Cover: 31%</b>                                                      |

### Ecological Community 3: Douglas-fir- western hemlock / salal (CWHxm03)

Ecological community 3 is found in the northern part of the Reserve at elevations above 150 metres and is in the Coastal Western Hemlock very dry maritime (CWHxm) subzone. The site is steeply sloping (70%) with a northerly aspect (9°). The soils are thin and well-drained with abundant loose surface rock and large amount of small diameter coarse woody debris. There is some blowdown of small diameter Douglas-fir trees and self-thinning with standing dead small diameter Douglas-fir and western redcedar trees. There are stumps from the former logging and some wildlife trees in the area. The forest canopy is primarily young Douglas-fir with some arbutus and western redcedar in the secondary canopy. The understory vegetation is dominated by mosses with sparse shrubs and forbs.



***Photo 7. Ecological Community 3 showing dense stand of young forest with Douglas-fir and arbutus and sparse understory. Photo: L. Matthias***

**Table 8. Description of Ecological Community 3.**

|                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Polygon ID:                       | Ecological Community 3                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Ecological Community:             | Douglas-fir- western hemlock / salal                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Classification:                   | CWHxm1/03                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Structural Stage:                 | Young forest                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Status (BC List):                 | Red-list                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Photopoint(s):                    | P7                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Ecological Community Description: | Moderately dry, well-drained forest with northern aspect mid-slope on ridge. Young forest dominated by small diameter Douglas-fir and arbutus.                                                                                                            |
| Disturbance Notes:                | Previously logged with many Douglas-fir stumps, some blowdown of small diameter Douglas-fir and self-thinning with standing dead Douglas-fir and western redcedar.                                                                                        |
| Anticipated Change/Succession:    | Increased complexity as forest self-thins allowing more light to understory.                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Wildlife observations:            | Heard: Northern Pacific Treefrog ( <i>Pseudacris regilla</i> ), Chestnut-backed Chickadee ( <i>Poecile rufescens</i> ). Observed: Pacific Bananaslug ( <i>Ariolimax columbianus</i> ), Black-tailed Deer ( <i>Odocoileus hemionus</i> ) browse and bones. |

**Table 9. Vegetation Species in Ecological Community 3.**

| VEGETATION SPECIES                                                  | PERCENT COVER (%) |           |             |              |                    |             | NOTES                                    |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|-----------|-------------|--------------|--------------------|-------------|------------------------------------------|
|                                                                     | Main Canopy       | Secondary | Shrub Layer | Herb Layer   | Moss, Lichen Layer | Non-natives |                                          |
| <i>Pseudotsuga menziesii</i> (Douglas-fir)                          | 25                |           |             |              |                    |             | MC: 40-60 yrs, ht: 10-15m, DBH: 20-40 cm |
| <i>Arbutus menziesii</i> (arbutus)                                  | 10                |           |             |              |                    |             | MC: 40-60 yrs, ht: 8-12 m, DBH: 20-40 cm |
| <i>Thuja plicata</i> (western redcedar)                             |                   | 3         |             |              |                    |             | SC: 10-20 yrs, ht: 3-5 m, DBH: 8-15 cm   |
| <i>Berberis nervosa</i> (dull Oregon-grape)                         |                   |           | 1           |              |                    |             |                                          |
| <i>Gaultheria shallon</i> (salal)                                   |                   |           | 1           |              |                    |             |                                          |
| <i>Holodiscus discolor</i> (oceanspray)                             |                   |           | <1          |              |                    |             |                                          |
| <i>Lonicera ciliosa</i> (western trumpet)                           |                   |           | <1          |              |                    |             |                                          |
| <i>Lonicera hispidula</i> (hairy honeysuckle)                       |                   |           | <1          |              |                    |             |                                          |
| <i>Rosa gymnocarpa</i> (baldhip rose)                               |                   |           | <1          |              |                    |             |                                          |
| <i>Bromus vulgaris</i> (Columbia brome)                             |                   |           |             | <1           |                    |             |                                          |
| <i>Corallorhiza</i> sp. (coralroot)                                 |                   |           |             | <1           |                    |             |                                          |
| <i>Festuca occidentalis</i> (western fescue)                        |                   |           |             | <1           |                    |             |                                          |
| <i>Goodyera oblongifolia</i> (rattlesnake plantain)                 |                   |           |             | <1           |                    |             |                                          |
| <i>Melica harfordii</i> (Harford's melic)                           |                   |           |             | <1           |                    |             |                                          |
| <i>Polystichum munitum</i> (sword fern)                             |                   |           |             | <1           |                    |             |                                          |
| <i>Mycelis muralis</i> (wall lettuce)                               |                   |           |             |              |                    | <1          |                                          |
| <b>Moss Layer</b>                                                   |                   |           |             |              |                    |             | <b>Total Moss Layer: 60%</b>             |
| <i>Eurynchium oreganum</i> (Oregon-beaked moss)-on wood or boulders |                   |           |             |              | 50                 |             |                                          |
| <i>Hylocomium splendens</i> (step moss)                             |                   |           |             |              | 5                  |             |                                          |
| <i>Rhytidiadelphus triquetrus</i> (electrified cat's-tail moss)     |                   |           |             |              | 5                  |             |                                          |
| <b>Cover by Layer (%)</b>                                           | <b>35</b>         | <b>3</b>  | <b>2</b>    | <b>&lt;1</b> | <b>60</b>          |             | <b>Total Canopy Cover: 38%</b>           |



#### Ecological Community 4: Western hemlock- Douglas-fir / Oregon beaked moss (CWHxm01)

This community includes a steep (60%) north-facing (345°) gully in the northern central part of the Reserve. There is scattered surface rock and decaying coarse woody debris on the forest floor with an abundance of arbutus litter. The soils are thin and very rapidly draining. There are Douglas-fir stumps next to the gully and a number of young western redcedar in the gully bottom and on the moisture receiving banks.



***Photo 8. Ecological Community 4 which includes the banks and bottom of a steep gully in the north central part of the Reserve. Photo: L. Matthias***

**Table 10. Description of Ecological Community 4.**

|                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Polygon ID:                       | Ecological Community 4                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Ecological Community:             | Western hemlock- Douglas-fir / Oregon beaked moss                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Classification:                   | CWHxm/01                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Structural Stage:                 | Young forest                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Status (BC List):                 | Red-list                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Photopoint(s):                    | P8                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Ecological Community Description: | Steep, north-facing gully in the northern part of the Reserve above 150 metres. Moderately dry, well-drained forest with northern aspect mid-slope on ridge. Young forest dominated by small diameter western redcedar and arbutus. |
| Disturbance Notes:                | Previously logged with many Douglas-fir stumps.                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Anticipated Change/Succession:    | Increased complexity as forest self-thins allowing more light to understory. Western redcedar may act as nurse species for secondary canopy of Douglas-fir.                                                                         |
| Wildlife observations:            | Black-tailed Deer ( <i>Odocoileus hemionus</i> ) browse and scat.                                                                                                                                                                   |

**Table 11. Vegetation Species in Ecological Community 4.**

| VEGETATION SPECIES                                                  | PERCENT COVER (%) |           |             |              |                    |             | NOTES                                                                          |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|-----------|-------------|--------------|--------------------|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                                     | Main Canopy       | Secondary | Shrub Layer | Herb Layer   | Moss, Lichen Layer | Non-natives |                                                                                |
| <i>Arbutus menziesii</i> (arbutus)                                  | 15                |           |             |              |                    |             | MC: 25-50 yrs, ht: 7-10 m, DBH: 25-60 cm                                       |
| <i>Thuja plicata</i> (western redcedar)                             | 15                |           |             |              |                    |             | MC: 20-50 yrs, ht: 10-15 m, DBH: 35-40 cm                                      |
| <i>Pseudotsuga menziesii</i> (Douglas-fir)                          | 10                |           |             |              |                    |             | MC: 25-50 yrs, ht: 10-15m, DBH: 50 cm<br>SC: 15-20 yrs, ht: 8 m, DBH: 10-18 cm |
| <i>Berberis nervosa</i> (dull Oregon-grape)                         |                   |           | 1           |              |                    |             |                                                                                |
| <i>Gaultheria shallon</i> (salal)                                   |                   |           | 1           |              |                    |             |                                                                                |
| <i>Rosa gymnocarpa</i> (baldhip rose)                               |                   |           | <1          |              |                    |             |                                                                                |
| <i>Vaccinium parvifolium</i> (red huckleberry)                      |                   |           | <1          |              |                    |             |                                                                                |
| <i>Polystichum munitum</i> (sword fern)                             |                   |           |             | <1           |                    |             |                                                                                |
| <b>Moss Layer</b>                                                   |                   |           |             |              |                    |             | <b>Total Moss Layer: 10%</b>                                                   |
| <i>Eurynchium oreganum</i> (Oregon-beaked moss)-on wood or boulders |                   |           |             |              | 10                 |             |                                                                                |
| <b>Cover by Layer (%)</b>                                           | <b>40</b>         |           | <b>2</b>    | <b>&lt;1</b> | <b>10</b>          |             | <b>Total Canopy Cover: 40%</b>                                                 |



### Ecological Community 5: Douglas-fir / dull Oregon-grape (CDFmm01)

This maturing second or third growth forest is steeply sloping (100%) mid-slope with a northern aspect (25°). The forest is comprised of young Douglas-fir and arbutus trees with patches of salal and moss in the understory. There are a few scattered older veteran trees estimated to be 80 years old with a DBH of 70 centimetres. There are some small surface rocks and a number of small diameter blow downs that now form coarse woody debris on the forest floor. There are also some small diameter standing dead trees. The site is well-drained and moderately dry.



***Photo 9. Ecological Community 5 showing mixed Douglas-fir and arbutus with patches of dense salal in understory. Photo: C. Maslovat***

**Table 12. Description of Ecological Community 5.**

|                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Polygon ID:                       | Ecological Community 5                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Ecological Community:             | Douglas-fir / dull Oregon-grape                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Classification:                   | CDFmm/01                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Structural Stage:                 | Young forest                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Status (BC List):                 | Red-list                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Photopoint(s):                    | P9                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Ecological Community Description: | Steep, north-facing slope in northern part of the Reserve below 150 metres. Moderately dry, well-drained forest dominated by Douglas-fir and arbutus.                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Disturbance Notes:                | Previously logged with Douglas-fir stumps and older stumps with fire scars. Some blowdown of small diameter Douglas-fir.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Anticipated Change/Succession:    | Increased complexity as forest self-thins allowing more light to understory.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Wildlife observations:            | Heard: Red-breasted Nuthatch ( <i>Sitta canadensis</i> ), Common Raven ( <i>Corvus corax</i> ).<br>Observed: American Robin ( <i>Turdus migratorius</i> ), Brown Creeper ( <i>Certhia americana</i> ), Northern Flicker ( <i>Colaptes auratus</i> ), Red Squirrel ( <i>Tamiasciurus hudsonicus</i> ), Black-tailed Deer ( <i>Odocoileus hemionus</i> ) trails. |



**Table 13. Vegetation Species in Ecological Community 5.**

| VEGETATION SPECIES                                              | PERCENT COVER (%) |           |             |            |                    |              | NOTES                                                                               |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|-----------|-------------|------------|--------------------|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                                 | Main Canopy       | Secondary | Shrub Layer | Herb Layer | Moss, Lichen Layer | Non-natives  |                                                                                     |
| <i>Pseudotsuga menziesii</i> (Douglas-fir)                      | 15                | 5         |             |            |                    |              | MC: 30-60 yrs, ht: 10-20 m, DBH: 20-35 cm<br>SC: 15-20 yrs, ht: 6-8 m, DBH: 8-10 cm |
| <i>Arbutus menziesii</i> (arbutus)                              | 15                |           |             |            |                    |              | MC: 30-70 yrs, ht: 10-15 m, DBH: 25-35 cm                                           |
| <i>Thuja plicata</i> (western redcedar)                         |                   | 5         |             |            |                    |              | SC: 10-25 yrs, ht: 3-10 m, DBH: 8-20 cm                                             |
| <i>Gaultheria shallon</i> (salal)                               |                   |           | 35          |            |                    |              |                                                                                     |
| <i>Berberis nervosa</i> (dull Oregon-grape)                     |                   |           | 1           |            |                    |              |                                                                                     |
| <i>Holodiscus discolor</i> (oceanspray)                         |                   |           | <1          |            |                    |              |                                                                                     |
| <i>Lonicera ciliosa</i> (western trumpet)                       |                   |           | <1          |            |                    |              |                                                                                     |
| <i>Lonicera hispidula</i> (hairy honeysuckle)                   |                   |           | <1          |            |                    |              |                                                                                     |
| <i>Rosa gymnocarpa</i> (baldhip rose)                           |                   |           | <1          |            |                    |              |                                                                                     |
| <i>Symphoricarpos</i> sp.                                       |                   |           | <1          |            |                    |              |                                                                                     |
| <i>Polystichum munitum</i> (sword fern)                         |                   |           |             | 1          |                    |              |                                                                                     |
| <i>Acer macrophyllum</i> (bigleaf maple)                        |                   |           |             | <1         |                    |              |                                                                                     |
| <i>Bromus vulgaris</i> (Columbia brome)                         |                   |           |             | <1         |                    |              |                                                                                     |
| <i>Corallorhiza</i> sp. (coralroot)                             |                   |           |             | <1         |                    |              |                                                                                     |
| <i>Festuca occidentalis</i> (western fescue)                    |                   |           |             | <1         |                    |              |                                                                                     |
| <i>Goodyera oblongifolia</i> (rattlesnake plantain)             |                   |           |             | <1         |                    |              |                                                                                     |
| <i>Melica harfordii</i> (Harford's melic)                       |                   |           |             | <1         |                    |              |                                                                                     |
| <i>Mycelis muralis</i> (wall lettuce)                           |                   |           |             |            |                    | <1           |                                                                                     |
| <b>Moss Layer</b>                                               |                   |           |             |            |                    |              | <b>Total Moss Layer: 37%</b>                                                        |
| <i>Eurynchium oregonum</i> (Oregon-beaked moss)                 |                   |           |             |            | 25                 |              |                                                                                     |
| <i>Rhytidiadelphus triquetrus</i> (electrified cat's-tail moss) |                   |           |             |            | 10                 |              |                                                                                     |
| <i>Hylocomium splendens</i> (step moss)                         |                   |           |             |            | 2                  |              |                                                                                     |
| <b>Cover by Layer (%)</b>                                       | <b>30</b>         | <b>10</b> | <b>36</b>   | <b>1</b>   | <b>37</b>          | <b>&lt;1</b> | <b>Total Canopy Cover: 40%</b>                                                      |

### Ecological Community 6: Douglas-fir / Arbutus (CDFmm02)

The maturing second or third growth forest slopes to the west (260°) over undulating terrain with an average slope of 35%. The forest is a mix of young Douglas-fir and arbutus with exposed rock outcrop and very thin soils. The soils are poor and fast-draining and there are Douglas-fir stumps throughout. There is a large amount of arbutus litter on the forest floor.



***Photo 10. Ecological Community 6 with mixed young Douglas-fir and arbutus and much exposed rock.  
Photo: C. Maslovat***

**Table 14. Description of Ecological Community 6.**

|                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Polygon ID:                       | Ecological Community 6                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Ecological Community:             | Douglas-fir / arbutus                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Classification:                   | CDFmm/02                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Structural Stage:                 | Young forest                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Status (BC List):                 | Red-list                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Photopoint(s):                    | P10                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Ecological Community Description: | West-facing open, dry, well-drained mixed Douglas-fir and arbutus forest below. Rock outcrops are dominant.                                                                                 |
| Disturbance Notes:                | Previously logged with many Douglas-fir stumps.                                                                                                                                             |
| Anticipated Change/Succession:    | Increased complexity as forest self-thins allowing more light to understory.                                                                                                                |
| Wildlife observations:            | Heard: Chestnut-backed Chickadee ( <i>Poecile rufescens</i> ), American Robin ( <i>Turdus migratorius</i> ).<br>Observed: Black-tailed Deer ( <i>Odocoileus hemionus</i> ) browse and scat. |

**Table 15. Vegetation Species in Ecological Community 6.**

| VEGETATION SPECIES                                                      | PERCENT COVER (%) |           |             |              |                    |              | NOTES                                                                             |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|-----------|-------------|--------------|--------------------|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                                         | Main Canopy       | Secondary | Shrub Layer | Herb Layer   | Moss, Lichen Layer | Non-natives  |                                                                                   |
| <i>Arbutus menziesii</i> (arbutus)                                      | 15                |           |             |              |                    |              | MC: 20-80 yrs, ht: 7-15 m, DBH: 15-45 cm                                          |
| <i>Pseudotsuga menziesii</i> (Douglas-fir)                              | 15                | 5         |             |              |                    |              | MC: 20-50 yrs, ht: 15-20 m, DBH: 30-45cm<br>SC: 3-20 yrs, ht: 1-10m, DBH: 3-20 cm |
| <i>Berberis nervosa</i> (dull Oregon-grape)                             |                   |           | 1           |              |                    |              |                                                                                   |
| <i>Gaultheria shallon</i> (salal)                                       |                   |           | <1          |              |                    |              |                                                                                   |
| <i>Lonicera hispidula</i> (hairy honeysuckle)                           |                   |           | <1          |              |                    |              |                                                                                   |
| <i>Rosa gymnocarpa</i> (baldhip rose)                                   |                   |           | <1          |              |                    |              |                                                                                   |
| <i>Symphoricarpos</i> sp. (snowberry)                                   |                   |           | <1          |              |                    |              |                                                                                   |
| <i>Bromus vulgaris</i> (Columbia brome)                                 |                   |           |             | <1           |                    |              |                                                                                   |
| <i>Festuca occidentalis</i> (western fescue)                            |                   |           |             | <1           |                    |              |                                                                                   |
| <i>Goodyera oblongifolia</i> (rattlesnake plantain)                     |                   |           |             | <1           |                    |              |                                                                                   |
| <i>Anisocarpus madioides</i> (woodland tarweed)                         |                   |           |             | <1           |                    |              |                                                                                   |
| <i>Cytisus scoparius</i> (Scotch broom)                                 |                   |           |             |              |                    | <1           |                                                                                   |
| <b>Moss Layer</b>                                                       |                   |           |             |              |                    |              | <b>Total Moss Layer: 50%</b>                                                      |
| <i>Dicranum</i> spp. (broom-moss)                                       |                   |           |             |              | 30                 |              |                                                                                   |
| <i>Eurynchium oreganum</i> (Oregon-beaked moss)-<br>on wood or boulders |                   |           |             |              | 20                 |              |                                                                                   |
| <i>Rhytidiadelphus triquetrus</i> (electrified cat's-<br>tail moss)     |                   |           |             |              | <1                 |              |                                                                                   |
| <b>Cover by Layer (%)</b>                                               | <b>30</b>         | <b>5</b>  | <b>1</b>    | <b>&lt;1</b> | <b>50</b>          | <b>&lt;1</b> | <b>Total Canopy Cover:<br/>35%</b>                                                |

### 3.8 Wildlife Species

The mixed coniferous and deciduous forest supports a number of bird and animal species. Songbirds are attracted to the open mixed forests on hilltops and the edges of rock outcrops. Common Raven (*Corvus corax*) use the updrafts next to Mount Erskine for soaring. Crevices in bedrock outcrops and rock overhangs on Mount Erskine provide important habitat for a number of animal species including sites for Turkey Vulture (*Cathartes aura*) nests.

The presence of standing dead wildlife trees provides perches for birds of prey, foraging habitat for woodpeckers, nesting habitat for birds that rely on cavities and roost sites for bats. There is a large amount of woody debris on the forest floor, including some large diameter logs that may be good habitat for amphibians and reptiles. Black-tailed deer (*Odocoileus hemionus*) scat and trails were noted throughout the Reserve.



**Photo 11. Large diameter Douglas-fir wildlife tree with many cavities. Photo: L. Matthias**

The Reserve likely provides habitat for a wide range of birds, but the field surveys were not done at an ideal time for assessing bird activity. Few gastropods were found due to the extremely dry conditions during the survey.

**Table 16. Wildlife Species Observed in Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve during 2019 Field Work.**

| Common Name               | Latin Name                     | Observation Type                        |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <b>Mammals</b>            |                                |                                         |
| Black-tailed Deer         | <i>Odocoileus hemionus</i>     | Scat, trails, bones and browse observed |
| Red Squirrel              | <i>Tamiasciurus hudsonicus</i> | Heard, middens seen                     |
| <b>Invertebrates</b>      |                                |                                         |
| Pacific Bananaslug        | <i>Ariolimax columbianus</i>   | Visual observation                      |
| Pacific Sideband          | <i>Monodenia fidelis</i>       | Visual observation                      |
| <b>Amphibians</b>         |                                |                                         |
| Northern Pacific Treefrog | <i>Pseudacris regilla</i>      | Heard calling                           |
| <b>Birds</b>              |                                |                                         |
| American Robin            | <i>Turdus migratorius</i>      | Heard and visual observation            |
| Dusky Grouse              | <i>Dendragapus obscurus</i>    | Noted in MacDonald and Crocker 2000     |
| Brown Creeper             | <i>Certhia americana</i>       | Heard and visual observation            |
| Chestnut-backed Chickadee | <i>Poecile rufescens</i>       | Heard and visual observation            |
| Common Raven              | <i>Corvus corax</i>            | Heard and visual observation            |
| Dark-eyed Junco           | <i>Junco hyemalis</i>          | Heard                                   |



|                          |                             |                                     |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Golden-crowned Kinglet   | <i>Regulus satrapa</i>      | Noted in MacDonald and Crocker 2000 |
| Hairy Woodpecker         | <i>Picoides villosus</i>    | Heard                               |
| Northern Flicker         | <i>Colaptes auratus</i>     | Heard                               |
| Pacific-slope Flycatcher | <i>Empidonax difficilis</i> | Heard                               |
| Pileated Woodpecker      | <i>Dryocopus pileatus</i>   | Cavities noted in trees             |
| Pine Siskin              | <i>Carduelis pinus</i>      | Noted in MacDonald and Crocker 2000 |
| Red-breasted Nuthatch    | <i>Sitta canadensis</i>     | Heard                               |
| Song Sparrow             | <i>Melospiza melodia</i>    | Noted in MacDonald and Crocker 2000 |
| Turkey Vulture           | <i>Cathartes aura</i>       | Observed flying over Reserve        |

### 3.9 Expected Change Over Time

The forests will continue to mature and diversify over time. In areas with dense young conifers, self-thinning will occur, providing more light for understory plants to grow. There will be slow development of old forest characteristics as trees mature and gaps are created through natural mortality and wind. In areas with dense growth, there will be self-thinning due to density-related mortality.

## 4.0 Threats

**Table 17. Threats to Natural Values in Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve.**

| Threats (examples below)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Forest | Overall Threat Rank |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|---------------------|
| <b>Recreational Activities and Unauthorized Human Disturbance:</b> Hiking can impact conservation targets through wildlife disturbance, soil disturbance, vegetation trampling, and erosion. This threat is expected to increase in severity over time with increasing numbers of residents and seasonal visitors to Salt Spring. Erosion and trail widening have been noted on several parts of the trail and there is trampling next to lookout sites (Drake 2019). There are unauthorized trails in the Reserve and on adjacent private land. Mountain bike use of the trails has caused increased erosion from braking on steep downhill sections as well as trail braiding and widening (Ferris 2005). Extra nutrients from dog feces can alter the vegetation community, shifting the balance toward more non-native species. | Medium | Medium              |
| <b>Fire (Catastrophic Wildfire):</b> Fire suppression results in a change of fire regime to lower-frequency and higher-intensity fires. Higher-intensity fires are also generally larger in size. A less frequent, more intense fire could potentially replace the forests. Vegetation recovery post-catastrophic fire is slow and invasive terrestrial species are likely to invade areas with bare soil. Because of the dense stands in the Reserve and high abundance of ladder fuels, the impact from a wildfire is likely to be moderate or high.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Medium | Medium              |
| <b>Invasive Non-Native Species:</b> Invasive non-native species are a significant threat to biodiversity, second only to habitat loss (IUCN 2018). The impact on native ecosystems, habitats and species can be severe and often irreversible. There are low numbers of Scotch broom ( <i>Cytisus scoparius</i> ) and a few isolated English holly ( <i>Ilex aquifolium</i> )                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Low    | Low                 |

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |               |               |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|---------------|
| plants in the Reserve. One holly next to the trail has been cut and is resprouting from the roots.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |               |               |
| <b>Problematic Native Species:</b> Hyper-abundant Black-tailed Deer ( <i>Odocoileus hemionus</i> ) can be problematic, limiting natural regeneration, dramatically altering understory vegetation structure and composition, and adversely affecting songbird populations (Martin et al. 2011).                                                                                                                       | Medium        | Medium        |
| <b>Windthrow and Falling Trees:</b> The high density of trees has led to natural mortality and thinning. There are a large number of small diameter dead and dying trees that are still standing or on the ground as woody debris. A significant windstorm in December 2018 resulted in a large number of fallen trees in the adjacent Mount Erskine Provincial Park, however the Reserve was less severely impacted. | Low           | Low           |
| <b>Climate Changes:</b> Over time, the trend towards longer, drier summers and droughts in the region may impact the survival of tree seedlings and even established species such as western redcedar that prefer wetter soils. Dead, small diameter cedars were noted in the Reserve.                                                                                                                                | Unknown       | Unknown       |
| <b>Overall Threat Status for Protected Area</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | <b>Medium</b> | <b>Medium</b> |

#### 4.1 Expected Change to Threats Over Time

Recreational activities and unauthorized human disturbance in the Reserve are likely to increase over time given the increased development pressure on Salt Spring Island and the increase in seasonal visitors.

The threat of catastrophic high-intensity wildfire could move to high in the region as climate appears to be shifting to increasingly drier summers and fire suppression remains active in the region.

Invasive species spread will likely increase without a concerted effort at control. Ongoing removal and control efforts will be required because Scotch broom forms large, persistent seed banks and English holly can continue to resprout from cut stems.

## 5.0 Community Engagement

### 5.1 Adjacent Landholders

In preparation for the development of the Management Plan, letters were sent to all landholders and neighbours within a 100 metre radius of the Reserve. A total of 10 letters were mailed on November 29, 2019 (Appendix C). The letters contained information about Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve, an invitation to a public display, and a questionnaire (see Appendix D).

### 5.2 First Nations

Letters were mailed to the following First Nations on December 2, 2020 (Appendix E):

- Cowichan Tribes, Halalt First Nation, Lyackson First Nation, MÁLEXEL (Malahat) Nation, BOKEĆEN (Pauquachin) First Nation, Penelakut Tribe, SEMYOME (Semiahmoo) First Nation, Stz'uminus (Chemainus) First Nation, WJOŁŁP (Tsartlip) First Nation, SÁÁUTW

(Tsawout) First Nation, Tsawwassen First Nation, W̱SIḴEM (Tseycum) First Nation, Ts'uubaa-asatx (Lake Cowichan) First Nation

This letter provided information about the Nature Reserve and outlined the proposed management plan. It also outlined the commitment to develop a parallel Management Plan for Areas of Cultural Heritage and Sacred Significance. This parallel Management Plan sets out guiding principles for cooperative collaboration between ITC and First Nations.

### 5.3 Conservation Partners and Community Members

The Islands Trust Conservancy was present at the Saturday market at Centennial Park, December 14<sup>th</sup>, 2019 from 10:30am to 12:30pm. People attending the market were asked to provide input on the draft management plan and general management planning for the reserve. Maps and photographs were presented, and residents were asked for their input at that time.

An online questionnaire was also made available from November 29, 2019 – January 20, 2020.

### 5.4 Engagement Results

The questionnaire was completed by 11 people. All respondents were full-time Salt Spring Island residents, with 45% living on northern Salt Spring, 45% living on the mid-island and 10% living on southern Salt Spring. Some respondents (36%) visit the reserve a few times per year, some (18%) have visited the reserve a few times, and many (45%) had never visited the reserve. Most who have visited the reserve engaged in hiking/walking (83%) and some engaged in dog walking (33%) or trail running (9%). The most important values for respondents were protection of habitat for at-risk species (70%), conservation for the sake of the intrinsic value of nature (50%), and ecosystem services (50%). Recreational opportunities (40%) and educational and research opportunities (10%) were also noted as important values by respondents.

## 6.0 Management Recommendations

The general management direction for the Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve is to allow natural successional processes. With the exception of fire, natural disturbance factors due to wind (windthrow), pest infestation, disease, and wildlife use should proceed without intervention. Only the removal of invasive plant species is permitted. Public access will be limited to the Jack Fisher trail and public use will not be encouraged in other areas in order to limit fragmentation and disturbance.

### 6.1 Management Roles

The Islands Trust Conservancy is the sole landholder of the Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve and monitors the Reserve annually to determine any management concerns. The Nature Conservancy of Canada (NCC) and the Habitat Acquisition Trust (HAT) hold a conservation covenant on the title of the land. Annual monitoring to ensure compliance with the terms of the conservation covenant are the responsibility of the covenant holders.

The Islands Trust Conservancy had a management agreement with the Salt Spring Trail and Nature Club which is in effect from 2001-2026 (Ferris 2005). The Salt Spring Trail and Nature Club have not been involved in active management in the last few years and connections should be renewed to help maintain the Jack Fisher trail and protect against erosion, vegetation trampling and soil disturbance.

**Table 18. Partners involved in management of MENR.**

| Partner                           | Role             |
|-----------------------------------|------------------|
| Island Trust Conservancy          | Land holder      |
| Nature Conservancy of Canada      | Covenant Holder  |
| Habitat Acquisition Trust         | Covenant Holder  |
| Salt Spring Trail and Nature Club | Trail management |

## 6.2 Permitted and Prohibited Uses

The public is invited to use the existing Jack Fisher trail for hiking and nature appreciation. Dogs should be on-leash.

The following activities by the public are prohibited<sup>7</sup>:

- Hunting<sup>8</sup>
- Use of motorized vehicles
- Bicycling
- Horseback riding
- Camping
- Fires
- Forestry
- Livestock grazing
- Trail development
- Tree cutting
- Collection of plants, animals or fungi<sup>9</sup>

## 6.3 Proposed Monitoring Program

### *Covenant Monitoring*

Annual covenant monitoring efforts are intended to ensure the terms and intent of the covenant are being upheld. The conservation covenant held by NCC and HAT offers an additional layer of protection for lands within the Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve to help ensure they are being managed effectively for conservation purposes. If an issue is found to be in violation of the terms of the covenant, the covenant holders will work in cooperation with ITC to find an appropriate remedy or management solution.

<sup>7</sup> ITC acknowledges the inherent rights of Indigenous Peoples under Section 35 of the Canadian Constitution

<sup>8</sup> Hunting under Section 35 of the Constitution Act, 1982 recognizes and affirms the inherent rights of Indigenous Peoples.

<sup>9</sup> Harvesting and gathering under Section 35 of the Constitution Act, 1982 recognizes and affirms the inherent rights of Indigenous Peoples.

### *Trail Use*

Trail condition should be assessed for the purpose of safety and for evidence of prohibited activities (such as off-leash dog walking or mountain biking). Property monitoring (including covenant monitoring) is intended to observe and report any potential unauthorized trail development outside of the approved trail network.

### *Boundaries, Encroachment*

It is recommended to monitor the property boundaries, in particular where the Reserve abuts privately-managed land. In particular, the northern, eastern and southwestern boundary should be monitored for encroachments such as tree cutting and unauthorized trail development.

### *Species & Habitat (Biological) Monitoring*

Species at risk surveys and monitoring are encouraged during appropriate times of year to assess which species are present. Monitoring of invasive species spread is advisable over time so that control measures can be taken as required.

## 6.4 Public Access

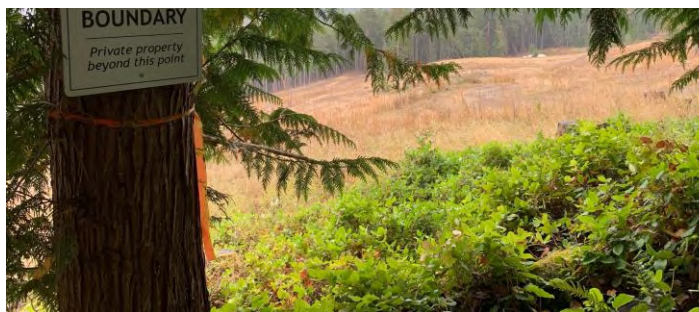
Access to the park is via the Jack Fisher trail that connects Collins Road west of the Reserve to Mount Erskine Provincial Park in the south. Mount Erskine is one of the most popular hiking destinations on Salt Spring and the park receives heavy visitor traffic including many off-leash dogs. It is unclear how frequently the trail is used by mountain bikes but their use is recorded in the previous management plan (Ferris 2005). There are several well-used unauthorized trails in the Reserve.



**Photo 12. Unauthorized trail along old logging road to privately-managed property to the north. Photo: L. Matthias**

## 6.5 Signage

The trailhead at Collins Road is signed as follows: a wooden Jack Fisher Trail sign is attached to a tree; a Nature Conservancy of Canada conservation covenant sign, a multi-agency sign requesting people keep their dogs on leash and a trail map are



**Photo 13. Islands Trust Conservancy Nature Reserve Boundary sign on the northern property boundary. Photo: C. Maslovat**



mounted on a wooden post; and an Islands Trust Conservancy sign requesting that visitors stay on the trail is attached to a second wooden trail post.

The Jack Fisher trail route is marked with small diagonal orange metal tags that are nailed into the trees. The trees are beginning to grow around some of the tags.

There is a BC Parks boundary sign where the trail crosses into Mount Erskine Provincial Park to the south.

The northern boundary of the Reserve is signed with two Islands Trust Conservancy boundary signs and the border has been signed with metal covenant boundary stakes. The boundary of the Reserve is signed where a second unauthorized trail enters the Reserve along southern part of the western boundary.

As part of reconciliation ITC may discuss signage and naming with First Nations.

## 6.6 Trail Use, Maintenance and Development

Jack Fisher “Assault Route” trail leads from Collins Road to the west of the Reserve to the summit of Mount Erskine on the adjacent provincial park. The trail is frequently used by hikers and dogs (many of which are off leash).

Due to the steepness of the trail, thin soils and high level of use, erosion is occurring in some areas. At the trail entrance at Collins Road and in the upper portion of the Reserve, the trail has become significantly eroded and is funneling water during heavy rain events (Drake 2019). The erosion has moved fine soils downslope and has impacted vegetation along the trail edge (Drake 2019).

There are several unauthorized trails in the park. The most well-travelled trail leads from the main trail in a side loop through adjacent private property to the south and west of the Reserve. It is recommended that this trail be closed by installing split rail fences at either end that are well signed



**Photo 14. Well-worn trail showing erosion next to tree roots. Photo: L. Matthias**



**Photo 15. Trail braiding on the Jack Fisher trail. Photo: L. Matthias**

to explain the trail closure (Drake 2019). A second less frequently used trail leads from the main trail to the adjacent private property to the south along an old skid road. There are other small desire line trails to scenic lookouts including one small loop trail. All unauthorized trails should be closed by scattering debris over the trails where they connect with the main trail and should be signed appropriately.

In some locations, the trail has become very wide and/or braided as people seek safe footing in steep sections of trail. These areas could be restored by placing large woody debris and rocks on the surface. In lookout areas, planting with native plants may be necessary.



**Photo 16. Trampled area at lookout and no native vegetation remaining. Photo: L. Matthias**

The trail is marked with small metal reflective tags that are nailed into trees and in some locations the trees are growing over the route markers. The

route is better marked on the way down than on the way up. The metal trail markers could be removed and replaced with a lower impact system that does not damage the trees. An option is non-toxic, high visibility orange paint applied with a diamond stencil, installed in both directions along the trail.

The adjacent trail in Mount Erskine provincial park has a number of fairy doors both next to the trail and off trail. These fairy doors encourage desire line trail and also encourage people to place objects next to them.

### 6.7 Protection Initiatives for Sensitive Ecosystems and Species and Ecosystems at Risk

There are no known rare species in the Reserve although it is likely some occur in Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve given the high number of species at risk on the adjacent property. Surveys are recommended to identify locations of species at risk to aid management planning. Protection initiatives for sensitive ecosystems include trail maintenance and restoration and invasive species removal.

### 6.8 Ecological Restoration Options

Ecological restoration options should focus on the rehabilitation of the trail. This work should include the installation of split rail fences to permanently close the unauthorized loop trail that trespasses on private land at both the upper and lower junction points. Both fences should be clearly signed to explain why the trail has been closed. Coarse woody debris and finer material held in place with rocks should be placed on the trail bed to make the trail less obvious, reduce erosion and encourage soil accumulation (Drake 2019).



Trail creep can be addressed by placing logs or rocks along the lower edge of the trail to define the trail edge and allow silt and debris to accumulate, aiding soil deposition (Drake 2019).

In areas where water is channeled over the trail bed and is causing erosion, it is recommended that measures be taken to slow the flow of water while providing stepping-stones where necessary to provide safe footing for hikers (Drake 2019).

To restore desire line trails and trampling next to viewpoints, it is recommended that woody debris and rocks be placed in the area to limit trampling. If this is not effective, it may be necessary to install split rail fences or plant and cage native trees or shrubs (Drake 2019). Plantings should be monitored annually and cages removed once the trees have grown to a suitable size to be able to withstand some browsing by deer. Species chosen for restoration planting should be those currently found within the Reserve (Appendix A).

### 6.9 Scientific Research/Education Opportunities

No research has been conducted to date in the Reserve. Possible future research could include species at risk surveys and monitoring during peak season for a variety of species, such as rare plants, mosses and lichens, bats, birds, gastropods, reptiles and amphibians.

### 6.10 Exotic and Invasive Species Management

The Reserve is notable for its lack of exotic and invasive species. A few small English holly (*Ilex aquifolium*) plants were noted scattered throughout the Reserve and they should be removed as soon as possible before they become well established. Holly will re-sprout from cut stems so ongoing treatment may be necessary. There are small patches of young Scotch broom (*Cytisus scoparius*) that should be removed before they spread into other areas of the Reserve.



**Photo 17. Small English Holly plant next to trail that has re-sprouted after being cut. Photo: L. Matthias**



**Photo 18. Young Scotch broom on thin soil rock outcrop next to trail. Photo: L. Matthias**

### 6.11 Wildfire Risk Management

Wildfire and wildfire suppression can be extremely damaging to sensitive ecosystems. Fire has been excluded for a long time in traditionally fire maintained ecosystems which has resulted in landscapes that will be very dramatically altered in the event of fire and perhaps unable to return to the natural state we are trying to manage for after a high intensity fire takes place. A fire risk analysis to develop approaches for mitigating the threat of wildfire in the Reserve, particularly human-source fires, is recommended. Possible methods of controlling human sources of fire include posting notices of smoking bans, installing signs to notify the public of the fire-danger index, temporary trail closures during periods of extreme fire danger and adopting a cigarette butt disposal protocol.

Management actions, such as removing woody debris, are limited by the overarching conservation objective of minimizing disturbance to the natural environment. These actions to reduce the impact of wildfire may need to be considered for the long-term protection of the ecosystem. Developing a plan for fire management in consultation with the Salt Spring Island Fire Department and BC Wildfire Service to identify optimum fire suppression techniques is recommended. This information should be provided to the province to be included in their annual fire plan. If possible, it is preferred that saltwater or fire retardants are not used for fire suppression since both can cause ecological damage to sensitive ecosystems. Maxwell Lake or Saint Mary Lake are nearby sources of freshwater on Salt Spring that should be used for bucketing in case of a wildfire.

### 6.12 Climate Change Impacts and Management

Climate change may impact the distribution of ecosystems across the landscape, affecting vegetation patterns, hydrology, and may encourage the outbreaks of pests. Trends that may prevail in this region include upslope migration of tree lines and ecosystem boundaries, and increased fire frequency (Hebda 1997).

The coastal Douglas-fir biogeoclimatic zone is highly sensitive to climate change (Hebda 1997). In the CDFmm, warm dry conditions will favour the replacement of forests by woodland or meadow/knoll characteristics and warm and mesic conditions may lead to the development of Garry oak woodlands and forests (Hebda 1997).

Changes within the Coastal Western Hemlock biogeoclimatic zone are expected to include an increase in fire frequency, especially with warmer, drier conditions and an increase in the dominance of sitka spruce (*Picea sitchensis*) (Hebda 1997). The range of the CWH zone is expected to be significantly reduced and the zone may disappear altogether (Hebda 1997).

Western redcedar is already experiencing dieback in many areas of Salt Spring, presumably due to drought conditions associated with climate change and several young cedars have died in the Reserve.

Ensuring ongoing protection and connectivity between large areas of protected ecosystems will aid the dispersal of species into new habitats and across elevations as vegetation patterns shift. These protected area matrices will provide potential reservoirs for dispersal into suitable habitats in adjacent areas as climate change shifts the distribution of these ecosystem types (McCloskey et al. 2009).



***Photo 19. Small dead western redcedar trees in shallow soils at right and left of photo. Photo: L. Matthias***

## 7.0 Action Items

### 7.1 Immediate Actions (1-2 years)

1. Support all partners, contractors and volunteers to complete cultural competency training in regard to reconciliation, knowledge and history of Coast Salish and Indigenous Peoples.
2. Engage with First Nations to ensure that the management plan is reflective of treaty, inherent rights, and the territories of each Nation.
3. Work in collaboration towards a Management Plan for Areas of Cultural Heritage, gathering and harvesting, and Sacred Significance with First Nations.
4. Install signage at the western boundary of the unauthorized trail to limit further use onto private property.
5. Replace trail markers that have damaged trees with a lower impact system for trail marking. Non-toxic, high visibility orange paint applied with a diamond stencil has been used effectively in other Nature Reserves as wayfinding markers. Markers should be installed in both directions along the trail.
6. Monitor trail conditions on Jack Fisher trail and implement a trail maintenance program.
7. Remove non-native Scotch broom and English holly from the Reserve before these invasive plants become more established.

### 7.2 Short term Actions (3-5 years)

1. Identify opportunities for cooperative management with First Nations.
2. Conduct a fire risk analysis that mitigates the threat of wildfire in the Reserve, particularly human-source fires, and reduces the impact of a wildfire, while also considering the forest ecology.



3. Develop and implement a trail decommissioning and restoration plan for the unofficial trail in the western portion of the Reserve where it is within Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve.

### 7.3 Long term Actions (5+ years)

1. Conduct surveys for species at risk and other wildlife (e.g. birds, amphibians, bats) to provide a better understanding of the natural values of the Reserve.
2. Monitor trail restoration work if implemented.

### 7.4 Ongoing or Annual Action Items

1. Conduct annual monitoring to identify management concerns, including off-trail public use, invasive species, use by mountain bikes, installation of fairy doors and off-leash dogs.
2. Conduct ongoing maintenance of signs.
3. Continue to inform the general public of the natural values of the site and the permitted and prohibited uses through information placed in local publications.

## 8.0 Conclusion

Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve is an important protected area in the Coastal Douglas-fir biogeoclimatic zone and on Salt Spring Island. Although impacted by logging, over time the land will develop into a mature forest. The Reserve provides important connectivity for wildlife habitat with Mount Erskine Provincial Park and Manzanita Ridge Nature Reserve and is an important recreation area for the Salt Spring community.

The ITC will act on the management action items identified in this plan to achieve the vision, objectives and purpose of the Reserve. Future management issues may lead to further action items that will be identified in work plans and in future revisions of this plan.

## 9.0 References

Block, J. and V. Hignett. 1982. Outdoor recreation classification for British Columbia. APD Technical Paper 8. Assessment and Planning Division. B.C. Ministry of Environment. Victoria, B.C.

Blom, G. 1989. Letter to the Honourable T. Huberts regarding the forestry potential of Lot 28 and 29, North Salt Spring Island, Cowichan Land District.

Drake, C. 2019. Trail management recommendations for Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve, Salt Spring Island. Unpublished report prepared for Islands Trust Conservancy. March 29, 2019.

Ecological Framework of Canada. 2019. Ecoregions of Canada. Website: <http://ecozones.ca/english/region/195.html> (Accessed September 2019).

Ferguson, R. 2019. Mt. Erskine Common Nighthawk Survey report. Unpublished report submitted to Islands Trust Conservancy. June 24, 2019.

Ferris, C. 2005. Management Plan for Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve, Salt Spring Island with notes on the Mount Erskine Crown Lands. Prepared for the Islands Trust Fund Board by Joel Ussery (February 1994) and revised by Chris Ferris (January 2005). Website: <http://www.islandstrustconservancy.ca/media/10385/itfmgmtplanmterskine.pdf> (Accessed September 2019).

Green, R.N. and K. Klinka. 1994. A Field Guide to Site Identification and Interpretation for the Vancouver Forest Region. Land Management Handbook No. 28. Ministry of Forests. Victoria, B.C.

Government of Canada. 2019. Canadian Climate Normals: 1981 to 2010 Climate Normals and Averages. Website: [http://climate.weather.gc.ca/climate\\_normals/index\\_e.html?#1981](http://climate.weather.gc.ca/climate_normals/index_e.html?#1981) (Accessed September 2019).

Hebda, R.J. 1997. Chapter 13: Impacts of Climate Change on Biogeoclimatic Zones of British Columbia and Yukon *In* Responding to Global Climate Change in British Columbia and Yukon, Volume 1 of the Canada Country Study: Climate Impacts and Adaptations. Eds E.Taylor and B. Taylor. Pp. 13-1 - 13-15.

International Union for Conservation of Nature (IUCN). 2019. Invasive Species. Website: <https://www.iucn.org/theme/species/our-work/invasive-species> (Accessed September 2019).

Islands Trust. 2008. Salt Spring Island Local Trust Committee Official Community Plan: Bylaw No. 434, 2008. Schedule "A". Volume 1: Land Use and Servicing Objectives. Adopted October 2, 2008/Consolidated Version June 2019. Website: [http://www.islandstrust.bc.ca/media/329643/ss-bl-434\\_ocp\\_vol-1\\_2019.pdf](http://www.islandstrust.bc.ca/media/329643/ss-bl-434_ocp_vol-1_2019.pdf) (Accessed September 2019).

Islands Trust. 2019a. Islands Trust Object. Website: <http://www.islandstrust.bc.ca/trust-council/islands-trust-act/> (Accessed September 2019).

Islands Trust 2019b. MapIt. Website: <http://mapit.islandstrust.bc.ca/Html5Viewer/Index.html?configBase=http://mapit.islandstrust.bc.ca/Geocortex/Essentials/REST/sites/MapIT/viewers/MapIT/virtualdirectory/Resources/Config/Default&runworkflow=Startup&Proceed=Prop> (Accessed September 2019).

Lockwood, M. 2006. Global protected area framework. *In* M. Lockwood, M. Lockwood, G. L. Worboys, and A. Kothari (Eds.). *Managing Protected Areas: A Global Guide* (p. 84). London: Earthscan.

MacDonald, A. and L. Crocker. 2000. Lower Mount Erskine Baseline Inventory Report. Unpublished report prepared for Islands Trust Fund.

McCloskey, S.P.J., L.D. Daniels, and J.A. McLean. 2009. Potential impacts of climate change on Western Hemlock Looper outbreaks. *Northwest Science*. 83(3): 225-238.

Martin, T.G., P. Arcese, and N. Scheerder. 2011. Browsing down our natural heritage: Deer impacts on vegetation structure and songbird populations across an island archipelago. *Biological Conservation* 144(2011): 459-469.

Mauger, G.S., J.H. Casola, H.A. Morgan, R.L. Strauch, B. Jones, B. Curry, T.M. Busch Isaken, L. Whitely Binder, M.B. Krosby, and A.K. Snover. 2015. State of Knowledge: Climate Change in Puget Sound. Report prepared for the Puget Sound Partnership and the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. Climate Impacts Group, University of Washington, Seattle. doi:10.7915/CIG93777D.

Province of British Columbia. No date. 4.1 CDFmm- Moist Maritime Coastal Douglas-fir Subzone. Website: [https://www.for.gov.bc.ca/hre/becweb/Downloads/Downloads\\_SubzoneReports/CDFmm.pdf](https://www.for.gov.bc.ca/hre/becweb/Downloads/Downloads_SubzoneReports/CDFmm.pdf) (Accessed September 2019).

Resource Inventory Committee (RIC). 1998. *Field Manual for Describing Terrestrial Ecosystems*. Co-published by Ministry of Forests and Ministry of Environment, Province of BC, Victoria, BC.

Salt Spring Archives. 2019. Salt Spring Place Names. Website: <https://saltspringarchives.com/PlaceNames.htm> (Accessed September 2019).

Species Inventory (SPI). 2019. Species at Risk data submitted to the Species Inventory database of the Province of British Columbia.

van Vliet, L.P.J, E.A. Kenney and A.J. Green. 1987. Soils of the Gulf Islands of British Columbia: Volume 4. Soils of Salt Spring Island. Report No. 43. British Columbia Soil Survey. Research Branch. Agriculture Canada. Ottawa, Ontario.

Wilcox, L. 2020. Cultural knowledge holder teachings from Coast Salish Elders and Hereditary Chiefs

## 10.0 Appendices

### Appendix A. Vegetation found in Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve.

\*Noted in baseline inventory but not observed during 2019 surveys.

\*\* listed in management plan but not observed during 2019 surveys.

| Common Name                                          | Latin Name                    | Status     |
|------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|------------|
| <i>Abies grandis</i>                                 | Grand fir                     |            |
| <i>Acer macrophyllum</i>                             | Bigleaf maple                 |            |
| <i>Achlys triphylla</i>                              | Vanilla-leaf                  |            |
| <i>Adenocaulon bicolor</i>                           | Pathfinder                    |            |
| <i>Aira caryophylla</i>                              | Silver hairgrass              | Introduced |
| <i>Aira praecox</i>                                  | Early hairgrass               | Introduced |
| <i>Alnus rubra</i>                                   | Red alder                     |            |
| <i>Anisocarpus madioides</i>                         | Woodland tarweed              |            |
| <i>Arbutus menziesii</i>                             | Arbutus                       |            |
| ** <i>Arctostaphylos columbiana</i>                  | Hairy manzanita               |            |
| <i>Berberis aquifolium</i>                           | Tall Oregon-grape             |            |
| <i>Berberis nervosa</i>                              | Dull Oregon-grape             |            |
| <i>Boschniakia hookeri</i>                           | Vancouver groundcone          |            |
| <i>Bromus vulgaris</i>                               | Columbia brome                |            |
| <i>Campanula scouleri</i>                            | Scouler's harebell            |            |
| <i>Cardamine</i> sp.                                 | Bittercress                   |            |
| ** <i>Chimaphila umbellata</i> ssp. <i>umbellata</i> | Common pipsissewa             |            |
| <i>Claytonia rubra</i>                               | Redstem springbeauty          |            |
| <i>Clinopodium douglasii</i>                         | Yerba buena                   |            |
| <i>Collinsia parviflora</i>                          | Small-flowered blue-eyed Mary |            |
| <i>Corallorhiza</i> sp.                              | Coralroot                     |            |
| <i>Cytisus scoparius</i>                             | Scotch broom                  | Introduced |
| <i>Danthonia californica</i>                         | California oatgrass           |            |
| <i>Dicranum</i> sp.                                  | Broom moss                    |            |
| <i>Elymus glaucus</i>                                | Blue wildrye                  |            |
| <i>Eurhynchium oreganum</i>                          | Oregon beaked-moss            |            |
| <i>Festuca occidentalis</i>                          | Western fescue                |            |
| <i>Fragaria vesca</i>                                | Wood strawberry               |            |
| <i>Galium aparine</i>                                | Cleavers                      |            |
| <i>Gaultheria shallon</i>                            | Salal                         |            |
| <i>Goodyera oblongifolia</i>                         | Rattlesnake plantain          |            |
| ** <i>Hemitomes congestum</i>                        | Gnome-plant                   |            |
| <i>Hieracium albiflorum</i>                          | White hawkweed                |            |
| <i>Heuchera micrantha</i>                            | Small-flowered alumroot       |            |
| <i>Holodiscus discolor</i>                           | Oceanspray                    |            |
| <i>Hylocomium splendens</i>                          | Step moss                     |            |
| <i>Hypochaeris radicata</i>                          | Hairy cat's-ear               | Introduced |
| <i>Ilex aquifolium</i>                               | English holly                 | Introduced |
| <i>Isoetecium</i> sp.                                | Isoetecium moss               |            |
| <i>Linnaea borealis</i> ssp. <i>borealis</i>         | Twinsflower                   |            |



|                                                 |                             |            |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|------------|
| <i>Lonicera ciliosa</i>                         | Western trumpet             |            |
| <i>Lonicera hispidula</i>                       | Hairy honeysuckle           |            |
| <i>Luzula</i> sp.                               | Wood-rush                   |            |
| <i>Lysimachia latifolia</i>                     | Broad-leaved starflower     |            |
| <i>Melica harfordii</i>                         | Harford's melic             |            |
| <i>Melica subulata</i>                          | Alaska oniongrass           |            |
| <i>Moehringia macrophylla</i>                   | Big-leaved sandwort         |            |
| <i>Mycelis muralis</i>                          | Wall lettuce                | Introduced |
| <i>Osmorhiza berteroi</i>                       | Mountain sweet-cicely       |            |
| <i>Monotropa uniflora</i>                       | Indian pipe                 |            |
| <i>Paxistima myrsinites</i>                     | Falsebox                    |            |
| <i>Platanthera</i> sp.                          | Rein orchid                 |            |
| <i>Pinus contorta</i> var. <i>contorta</i>      | Shore pine                  |            |
| <i>Polypodium glycyrrhiza</i>                   | Licorice fern               |            |
| <i>Polystichum munitum</i>                      | Sword fern                  |            |
| <i>Polytrichum</i> sp.                          | Haircap moss                |            |
| <i>Pseudotsuga menziesii</i>                    | Douglas-fir                 |            |
| <i>Pteridium aquilinum</i>                      | Bracken fern                |            |
| <i>Quercus garryana</i>                         | Garry oak                   |            |
| <i>Racomitrium</i> sp.                          | Rock-moss                   |            |
| <i>Rhytidiadelphus loreus</i>                   | Lanky moss                  |            |
| <i>Rhytidiadelphus triquetrus</i>               | Electrified cat's-tail moss |            |
| <i>Rosa gymnocarpa</i>                          | Baldhip Rose                |            |
| <i>Rubus ursinus</i>                            | Trailing blackberry         |            |
| * <i>Salix</i> sp.                              | Willow                      |            |
| <i>Sedum spathulifolium</i>                     | Broad-leaved stonecrop      |            |
| <i>Senecio sylvaticus</i>                       | Wood groundsel              | Introduced |
| * <i>Spirea douglasii</i> ssp. <i>douglasii</i> | Hardhack                    |            |
| <i>Symphoricarpos</i> sp.                       | Snowberry                   |            |
| <i>Thuja plicata</i>                            | Western redcedar            |            |
| <i>Tsuga heterophylla</i>                       | Western hemlock             |            |
| ** <i>Urtica dioica</i>                         | Stinging nettle             |            |
| <i>Vicia</i> sp.                                | Vetch                       |            |
| <i>Viola sempervirens</i>                       | Trailing yellow violet      |            |
| <i>Vaccinium parvifolium</i>                    | Red huckleberry             |            |
| <i>Vulpia</i> sp.                               | Fescue                      |            |

**Appendix B. Photographic Documentation.**

| PHOTO STATION                               | LOCATION (UTM Coordinates) | DIRECTION | PHOTO-GRAPHER | DATE YYYY-MM-DD | DESCRIPTION                                                                            |
|---------------------------------------------|----------------------------|-----------|---------------|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Anthropogenic Features as noted on Figure 2 |                            |           |               |                 |                                                                                        |
| P2                                          | 458984<br>5411632          | 70°       | CM            | 2019-09-19      | Collins Road trailhead signs and beginning of trail                                    |
| P3                                          | 459634<br>5411314          | 223°      | LM            | 2019-08-30      | Parks boundary sign at southern boundary                                               |
| P4                                          | 459117<br>5411622          | 205°      | LM            | 2019-08-30      | Orange reflective marker on tree                                                       |
| P12                                         | 459579<br>5411677          | 310°      | LM            | 2019-08-30      | Unauthorized trail to the north along old logging road                                 |
| P13                                         | 459452<br>5411723          | 0°        | CM            | 2019-08-30      | Islands Trust Conservancy boundary sign on northern boundary                           |
| P14                                         | 459033<br>5411672          | 110°      | LM            | 2019-08-30      | Well-worn trail showing erosion next to tree roots                                     |
| P15                                         | 459145<br>5411647          | 120°      | LM            | 2019-08-30      | Trail braiding on Jack Fisher trail                                                    |
| P16                                         | 459261<br>5411519          | 235°      | LM            | 2019-08-30      | Trampled area at lookout                                                               |
| Natural Features as noted on Figure 3       |                            |           |               |                 |                                                                                        |
| P1                                          | 459040<br>5411638          | 40°       | CM            | 2019-09-19      | Maturing second growth forest with Douglas-fir, arbutus trees and bedrock outcroppings |
| P5                                          | 459660<br>5411413          | 260°      | LM            | 2019-08-30      | Ecological Community 1 with pole/sapling Douglas-fir                                   |
| P6                                          | 459337<br>5411346          | 188°      | LM            | 2019-08-30      | Ecological Community 2 with steep bank                                                 |
| P7                                          | 459518<br>5411655          | 280°      | LM            | 2019-09-12      | Ecological Community 3 with young Douglas-fir and arbutus                              |
| P8                                          | 459374<br>5411641          | 100°      | LM            | 2019-09-12      | Ecological Community 4 showing steep gully                                             |

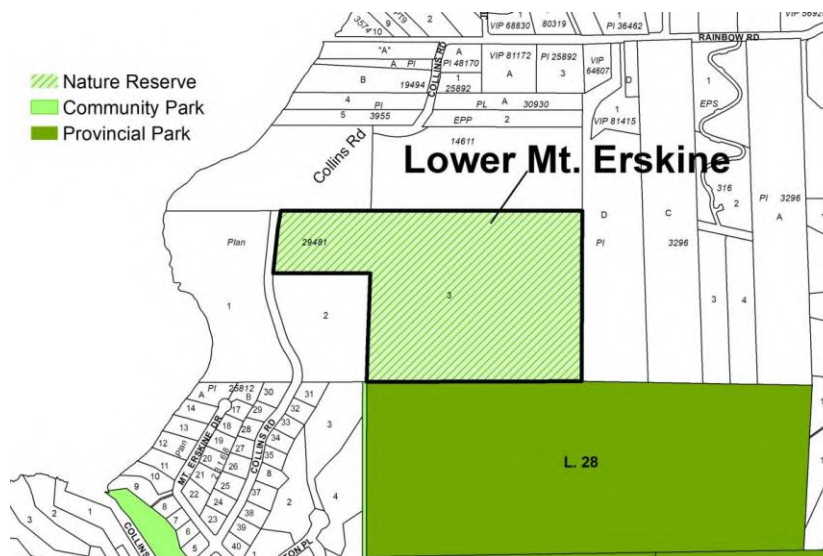
|     |                   |      |    |            |                                                                               |
|-----|-------------------|------|----|------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| P9  | 459111<br>5411697 | 70°  | CM | 2019-09-19 | Ecological Community 5 showing steep slope of Douglas-fir / Dull Oregon-grape |
| P10 | 459040<br>5411638 | 220° | CM | 2019-09-19 | Ecological Community 6 showing mixed Douglas-fir, arbutus with rock outcrops  |
| P11 | 459312<br>5411586 | 170° | LM | 2019-08-30 | Large diameter Douglas-fir wildlife tree with many cavities                   |
| P17 | 459296<br>5411451 | 70°  | LM | 2019-08-30 | Re-sprouting English holly plant                                              |
| P18 | 459217<br>5411581 | 90°  | LM | 2019-08-30 | Scotch broom                                                                  |
| P19 | 459050<br>5411667 | 350° | LM | 2019-08-30 | Dead western redcedar trees                                                   |

\* LM=Laura Matthias  
CM=Carrina Maslovat



Dear Neighbour,

The Lower Mt. Erskine Nature Reserve (PID 001-384-333, Lot 3, Section 2, Range 1 and 2 West, North Salt Spring Island, Cowichan District, Plan 29481) is an 22-hectare (54 acre) protected area located on the northwest slopes of Mount Erskine between Booth Bay and Erskine Point on the northwestern part of Salt Spring Island.



Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve serves as an important green space, part of a 150 ha (372 acre) contiguous protected area when combined with Mount Erskine Provincial Park and the Salt Spring Island Conservancy managed Manzanita Ridge Nature Reserve. The diversity of elevations, aspects, moisture regimes, forest ages and habitat types in the reserve support a range of plant and animal species. The Islands Trust Conservancy works to manage the property to protect its natural values, sensitive ecosystems, and threatened species.



The Islands Trust Conservancy will work in partnership with the Salt Spring Trail and Nature Club for trail management, and the Nature Conservancy of Canada and the Habitat Acquisition Trust who hold a conservation covenant on the nature reserve. There are restrictions on the use of the property, outlined in the conservation covenant, that have been put in place to protect the native plants and animals within the reserve.

Your input is requested for the development of the next Lower Mt. Erskine Nature Reserve Management Plan. As a neighbour of the reserve, we would like to hear your ideas and concerns regarding the long-term management of this special place.

The enclosed questionnaire can be:

- completed online at <https://www.surveymonkey.com/r/LowerMtErskine> or through our website: <http://www.islandstrustconservancy.ca> ;
- returned by mail to the Victoria office at 200 – 1627 Fort Street, Victoria, BC V8R 1H8; or,
- dropped off in person at the Islands Trust office on Salt Spring Island at 1 – 500 Lower Ganges Road.

**The deadline to complete the survey is January 20, 2019.**

If you would like to share your input in person, I will be at the Saturday Market at Centennial Square, December 14<sup>th</sup>, 2019 from 10:30am to 12:30pm to ask for input about the Lower Mt. Erskine Nature Reserve, as well as the Deep Ridge Nature Reserve, management planning process.

Thank you for taking the time to share your ideas regarding management of the Lower Mt. Erskine Nature Reserve. For more information, please contact me at the phone number or email listed below.

Sincerely,



Nuala Murphy  
Property Management Specialist, Islands Trust Conservancy  
250-405-5193  
[nmurphy@islandstrust.bc.ca](mailto:nmurphy@islandstrust.bc.ca)





**Appendix D. Questionnaire sent to Neighbours and Available Online.**

## Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve Questionnaire

---

Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve, established in 1996, is located on the northwest slopes of Mount Erskine between Booth Bay and Erskine Point on the northwestern part of Salt Spring Island. The Reserve is 22.5 hectares and consists of a steeply sloping forested area with rocky bluffs and outcroppings. The reserve is a popular hiking destination and there is a well-used trail that leads to the summit of Mount Erskine in the adjacent provincial park. Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve along with the adjacent Mount Erskine Provincial Park is an important, large (150 hectares), contiguous natural area in the Coastal Douglas-fir (CDFmm) and Coastal Western Hemlock (CWHxm) biogeoclimatic zones on Salt Spring Island.

The Islands Trust Conservancy's primary goal is to protect and nurture the sensitive ecosystems and natural values on this land. The information and actions required to achieve this goal and guide the management of the property are set out in a management plan that is updated every 10 years. We welcome community input and ask you to share your thoughts on the protection and long-term management of the Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve.

### 1. Are you a resident of Salt Spring Island?

- ☐ Yes, I live on north Salt Spring Island
- ☐ Yes, I live mid-island
- ☐ Yes, I live on south Salt Spring Island
- ☐ No, but I own property on Salt Spring Island
- ☐ No, I'm a visitor

### 2. Have you ever visited Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve? If so, how often?

- ☐ No, never
- ☐ Once
- ☐ A few times
- ☐ A few times per year
- ☐ Once a month or more

### 3. If you have visited Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve before, what did you do there?

- ☐ Hiking/walking
- ☐ Wildlife viewing
- ☐ Dog walking
- ☐ Other (please list):

### 4. Please list any wildlife and unique plant species you have seen in or near Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve:



**5. What do you believe to be the most important values of nature reserves? (choose three)**

- ☐ Protection of habitat for at-risk species
- ☐ Ecosystem services (e.g. clean water and air, erosion control, groundwater recharge, etc.)
- ☐ Recreational opportunities
- ☐ Education and research opportunities
- ☐ Tourism
- ☐ Aesthetic appeal
- ☐ Conservation for the sake of the intrinsic value of nature
- ☐ Other (please specify):

**6. What activities do you believe are incompatible with the protection of natural features, and should not be allowed within the Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve?**

**7. What do you feel could be the greatest threat to the health of this nature reserve, and should be the highest management priority for the Islands Trust Conservancy?**

**8. Please provide any other relevant information that will help us make the best management decisions for Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve.**

**9. Please share with us any history you know about this property or any knowledge you have about unique cultural or other special features on the property or in the area.**

**10. If you would like to receive periodic updates from the Islands Trust Conservancy on this and other conservation projects on the islands, please provide your name and email address:**

*Thank you for your time spent helping us plan the future of Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve.*



[www.islandstrustconservancy.ca](http://www.islandstrustconservancy.ca)

Page 2 of 2

***Appendix E. Letter to First Nations.***

December 2, 2020

Dear Chief and Council,

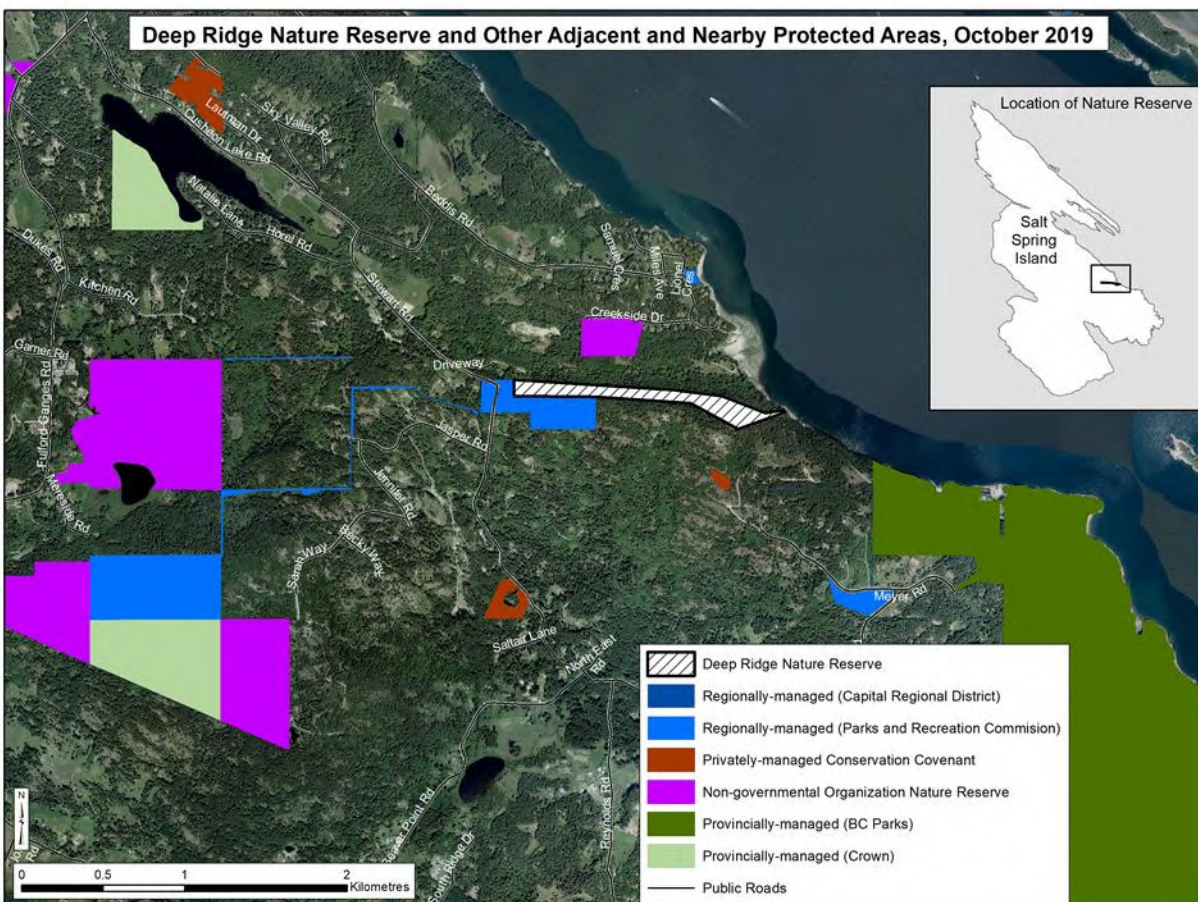
Re: Islands Trust Conservancy Nature Reserves on Salt Spring Island

The Islands Trust Conservancy, through its work as a land trust, is drafting management plans for the Deep Ridge Nature Reserve and the Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve on Salt Spring Island.

The nature reserves are within your First Nations treaty and/or territorial lands and waters and we want to ensure that the direction of the management plans is reflective of both reconciliation and conservation goals. At this time, ITC would like to work with you to understand the cultural significance and traditional use of the area so that these values can also be preserved and protected—now and into the future. We understand that the cultural significance of this land may be confidential and we would work with you to ensure that the management plan reflects this significance appropriately. Acknowledging the importance of naming and recognition, if there is signage, names, or place names that should be used for these areas please let us know.

Deep Ridge Nature Reserve (PID 018-031-552, Lot 3, Sections 75 and 76, South Salt Spring Island, Cowichan District, Plan VIP55669) is a 14.2-hectare (35 acre) protected area located on the southeast coast of Salt Spring Island, south of Cusheon Creek and adjacent to the Capital Regional District managed Peter Arnell Park.

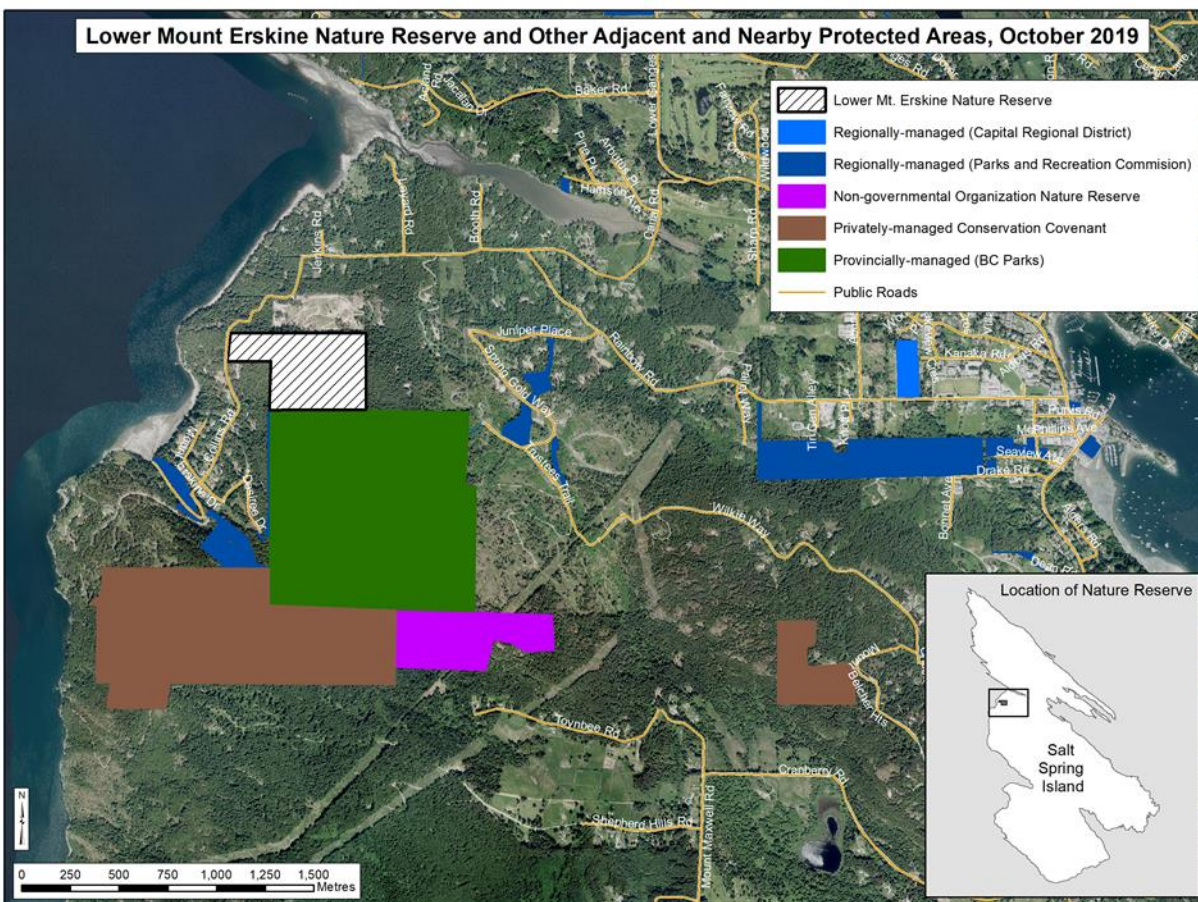
The reserve was logged in the past and is currently a steeply sloping young forest, which will likely mature into a red-listed ecological community. There are a number of wildlife trees, primarily small diameter standing dead trees. Two species at risk have been observed on the land: leafless wintergreen and Northern Red-legged Frog.



Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve (PID 001-384-333, Lot 3, Section 2, Range 1 and 2 West, North Salt Spring Island, Cowichan District, Plan 29481) is a 22-hectare (54 acre) protected area located on the northwest slopes of Mount Erskine between Booth Bay and Erskine Point on the northwestern part of Salt Spring Island.

Lower Mount Erskine Nature Reserve serves as an important green space, part of a 150 ha (372 acre) contiguous protected area when combined with Mount Erskine Provincial Park and the Salt Spring Island Conservancy managed Manzanita Ridge Nature Reserve. The diversity of elevations, aspects, moisture regimes, forest ages and habitat types in the reserve support a range of plant and animal species. ITC works in partnership with Nature Conservancy of Canada and Habitat Acquisition Trust, who hold a conservation covenant on this land to conserve its unique natural and ecological value.





Islands Trust Conservancy would like to undertake an archaeological review or traditional use study in collaboration with you. Islands Trust Conservancy passed a Reconciliation Declaration, committing to building relationships to work with your Nation to protect and manage the area and any cultural heritage sites in these nature reserves in a way that is reflective of treaty, inherent rights, and the territorial lands of your Nation.

You may also be interested to know that Islands Trust Conservancy has developed a draft management plan template that includes cultural heritage and spiritual significance. I would be pleased to provide it to you, as a starting point if you would like to comment on it.

Thank you for considering our request to work together. Please contact me at the number or email listed below. Thank you for your kind consideration.

Sincerely,

A handwritten signature in black ink, appearing to read "N. Murphy".

Nuala Murphy  
Property Management Specialist



Islands Trust Conservancy  
250-405-5193 | nmurphy@islandstrust.bc.ca

Islands Trust Conservancy's Victoria office is located in Coast Salish territory and we acknowledge with respect the the BOKEĆEN, Cowichan Tribes, Halalt, Homalco, K'ómoks, Klahoose, Ts'uubaa-asatx, Lək ʷəŋən (SXIMEŁŁ, Songhees, T'Sou-ke), Lyackson, MÁLEXEŁ, Penelakut, Qualicum, Scia'new, səłilwətaʔt, SEMYOME, shíshálh, Snaw-naw-as, Snuneymuxw, Skwxwú7mesh, SḶÁUTW, Stz'uminus, Tla'amin, scəwəθən məsteyəxʷ, We Wai Kai, Wei Wai Kum, WJOŁŁP, WSIKEM, and xʷməθkʷəy̓əm territories in which we live and work.



## REQUEST FOR DECISION

**To:** ITC Board **For the Meeting of:** January 26, 2021  
**From:** Staff **Date Prepared:** January 20, 2021

**SUBJECT:** ITC Board Meeting Town Hall

---

**RECOMMENDATION:** That the ITC Board direct staff to add "Town Hall and Delegations" to the standing agenda for ITC Board meetings, limiting the allocated total time to a maximum of 15 minutes, unless otherwise directed through Board resolution.

---

**1 PURPOSE:** To consider whether the ITC Board wishes to add a "Town Hall and Delegations" component to its standing agenda.

**2 BACKGROUND:**

ITC is currently the only body of the Islands Trust that does not have a designated agenda item for a Town Hall and Delegations. With the increase of electronic meetings, access to ITC meetings is easier for island residents and organizations as well as other individuals and organizations with an interest in the work of the Board. Following early electronic meetings, staff received an inquiry about ITC Town Hall opportunities and an expression of interest from a member of the public.

Currently a member of the public may appear before the ITC Board with 3 weeks notice as described in the ITC Meeting Bylaw (excerpt below).

**Notice to Secretary of Petitions and Delegations**

- 5.8 A person who wishes to present a petition to, or a delegation who wants to appear before the Board at a regular meeting of the Board shall, at least three weeks prior to the meeting, deliver the request in writing to the Secretary. The request shall include the name of each petitioner with his or her residential address and the subject of the petition or delegation.
- 5.9 At the discretion of the Chair, the petitioner or delegation may be given a space on the agenda.
- 5.10 No petition may be presented to, nor delegation appear before the Board unless Section 5.8 and 5.9 has been complied with unless otherwise agreed to by resolution of the Board at the meeting.

**Time Allowed for Petitions and Delegations**

- 5.12 The maximum time for presentation of a petition or appearance of a delegation before the Board is ten (10) minutes unless otherwise approved by resolution of the Board at the meeting.

Adding a section to the standing agenda of the ITC Board for Town Hall and Delegations through an ITC Board resolution will provide the opportunity for members of the public to speak without requiring special permission. The ITC Board Chair can allocate time as appropriate.

### 3 IMPLICATIONS OF RECOMMENDATION

**ORGANIZATIONAL:** The addition of a Town Hall and Delegation agenda item will increase the responsibility of the ITC Board Chair during meetings as it will require management and time allocation; however, it may also increase the accessibility of the ITC to its constituents.

**FINANCIAL:** None.

**POLICY:** None, although the ITC could consider amending policies or adding policies as needed if clarity regarding standards of conduct become needed.

**IMPLEMENTATION/COMMUNICATIONS:** Staff will add “Town Hall and Delegations” as a standing item to the ITC Agenda and will advise constituent via the ITC eNews.

**FIRST NATIONS:** None.

**CLIMATE CHANGE:** None.

**OTHER:** The Islands Trust Legislative Services Manager has noted that some Islands Trust bodies regulate public participation in their meeting bylaw, but time limits can also be done by resolution (as suggested in the recommendation). If the ITC makes changes to its Meeting Bylaw in the future, it may wish to contemplate adding limits to public participation at that time.

### 4 RELEVANT POLICY(S):

- [Bylaw 2: A Bylaw to Regulate the Meetings of the Islands Trust Conservancy Board and Committees of the Islands Trust Conservancy Board \(July 2019\)](#)

### 5 ATTACHMENT(S): None

---

### RESPONSE OPTIONS

**Recommendation:** That the ITC Board direct staff to add “Town Hall and Delegations” to the standing agenda for ITC Board meetings, limiting the allocated total time to a maximum of 15 minutes, unless otherwise directed through Board resolution.

**Alternative:** That the ITC Board take no action to add “Town Hall and Delegations” to its standing agenda.

---

**Prepared By:** Kate Emmings, Manager

**From:** Wells, Graham FLNR:EX <Graham.Wells@gov.bc.ca>  
**Sent:** Thursday, December 10, 2020 1:03 PM  
**To:** Kate Emmings  
**Cc:** Nuala Murphy  
**Subject:** RE: Lasqueti Island VQOs

Hi Kate,

The revisions will take place after consultation has been completed in order to consider all the feedback that has and will be received.

Regards,

---

**From:** Kate Emmings <[kemmings@islandstrust.bc.ca](mailto:kemmings@islandstrust.bc.ca)>  
**Sent:** December 10, 2020 12:30 PM  
**To:** Wells, Graham FLNR:EX <[Graham.Wells@gov.bc.ca](mailto:Graham.Wells@gov.bc.ca)>  
**Cc:** Nuala Murphy <[nmurphy@islandstrust.bc.ca](mailto:nmurphy@islandstrust.bc.ca)>  
**Subject:** RE: Lasqueti Island VQOs

**[EXTERNAL] This email came from an external source. Only open attachments or links that you are expecting from a known sender.**

Thanks Graham – I appreciated the response. Is it possible to see the revised mapping prior to the launch of the public consultation or is it still be prepared?

Cheers,

Kate

**Kate Emmings** | A/Manager  
Islands Trust Conservancy  
250-405-5191, Toll free via Service BC Contact Centre: in Vancouver (604) 660-2421, Elsewhere in BC 1-800-663-7867



[www.islandstrustconservancy.ca](http://www.islandstrustconservancy.ca)  
**Protecting islands in the Salish Sea**

Please consider the environment before printing this e-mail

*I am humbly thankful that I live and work in the territory of the BO'KEĆEN, Cowichan Tribes, Halalt, Homalco, K'ómoks, Klahoose, Ts'uubaa-asatx, Lək' wəŋən (SXIMELEL, Songhees, T'Sou-ke), Lyackson, MÁLEXEL, Penelakut, Qualicum, Scia'new, səliłwətaʔt, SEMYOME, Shishálh, Snaw-naw-as, Snuneymuxw, Skwəwú7mesh, SṪÁUTW, Stz'uminus, Tla'amin, Tsawwassen, We Wai Kai, Wei Wai Kum, WJOLELP, WSIKEM, and xʷməθkʷəŋəm.*

*Disclaimer: Territorial acknowledgements are just one small part of reconciliation. Please take a moment to think of other ways you can enact reconciliation.*

---

**From:** Wells, Graham FLNR:EX <[Graham.Wells@gov.bc.ca](mailto:Graham.Wells@gov.bc.ca)>  
**Sent:** Thursday, December 10, 2020 11:36 AM  
**To:** Kate Emmings <[kemmings@islandstrust.bc.ca](mailto:kemmings@islandstrust.bc.ca)>  
**Cc:** Nuala Murphy <[nmurphy@islandstrust.bc.ca](mailto:nmurphy@islandstrust.bc.ca)>  
**Subject:** RE: Lasqueti Island VQOs

Morning Kate,

Thanks again for your comments and sorry for the delayed response, but it did take some time pulling this information together. Just a quick update that due to the recent election I was requested to hold off on any further consultation for the proposed GAR Order until the new government had been sworn in to office. I actually haven't officially started public consultation yet, but this will ideally happen in the next few weeks.

Regarding your comments, please see the following reply is from our Visual Resource Management Specialist:

**Consideration of Mount Trematon as a landscape feature**

*The high point on Lasqueti, Mount Trematon, should be included in the update. The existing/original polygon appears to capture much of the visible area. However, I have prepared a visible area file from multiple viewpoints on both the north and south sides of Lasqueti to amend the mapping and include Mount Trematon.*

**Consideration of Viewpoints from Mount Trematon**

*It has been observed that the summit of Mount Trematon is a popular hiking destination and [some respondents] have suggested the summit be used as a viewpoint. The use of elevated viewpoints is very limited, and while there are exceptions, they tend to be in locations where there are very high viewer numbers. An example would be the Sea to Sky Gondola which has over 100K viewers a years. Further, the visual impact of forest developments, particularly blocks and roads, is done in perspective view, rather than from a superior or elevated view, and where the scale of the impact is assessed against a defined landform in perspective view. There are a number of man made and natural openings in the landscapes below Mount Trematon which would assist in any absorbing visible impacts of blocks viewed from the summit. It would be a different case for example if the landscapes were an unbroken layer of uniformly green forest.*

Thanks again for taking the time to provide comments and feedback Kate. This is an important part of the consultation process.

Cheers.

---

**From:** Kate Emmings <[kemmings@islandstrust.bc.ca](mailto:kemmings@islandstrust.bc.ca)>  
**Sent:** October 15, 2020 12:55 PM  
**To:** Wells, Graham FLNR:EX <[Graham.Wells@gov.bc.ca](mailto:Graham.Wells@gov.bc.ca)>



Cc: Nuala Murphy <[nmurphy@islandstrust.bc.ca](mailto:nmurphy@islandstrust.bc.ca)>

Subject: Lasqueti Island VQOs

**[EXTERNAL] This email came from an external source. Only open attachments or links that you are expecting from a known sender.**

Hello Graham,

Please accept the attached correspondence regarding the Lasqueti Island VQOs. Feel free to contact me should you have any questions.

Best regards,

Kate

**Kate Emmings** | A/Manager

Islands Trust Conservancy

250-405-5191, Toll free via Service BC Contact Centre: in Vancouver (604) 660-2421, Elsewhere in BC 1-800-663-7867



[www.islandstrustconservancy.ca](http://www.islandstrustconservancy.ca)

**Protecting islands in the Salish Sea**

*I am humbly thankful that I live and work in the territory of the BOKÉĆEN, Cowichan Tribes, Halalt, Homalco, K'ómoks, Klahoose, Ts'uubaa-asatx, Lək'wəŋən (SXIMELEL, Songhees, T'Sou-ke), Lyackson, MÁLEXEL, Penelakut, Qualicum, Scia'new, səlilwətaʔt, SEMYOME, Shíshálh, Snaw-naw-as, Snuneymuxw, Skwxwú7mesh, SÁÁUTW, Stz'uminus, Tla'amin, Tsawwassen, We Wai Kai, Wei Wai Kum, WJOLELP, WSIKEM, and xʷməθkʷəy̓əm.*

*Disclaimer: Territorial acknowledgements are just one small part of reconciliation. Please take a moment to think of other ways you can enact reconciliation.*

Please consider the environment before printing this e-mail



## Public Acquisitions Update January 26, 2021

| Property Name and Island                             | Date (yyyy/mm/dd) | Notes                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>PUBLICLY CONSIDERED PRIVATE LAND ACQUISITIONS</b> |                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>Crystal Mountain</b><br>(Galiano) 18.3 ha.        | 2017/11/21        | ITC previously considered a conservation covenant proposal and land transfer proposal for this property.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|                                                      | 2017/11/21        | <p>TFB-2017-031</p> <p>It was MOVED and SECONDED, that the Trust Fund Board accept the updated Conservation Proposal from the Crystal Mountain Society, agreeing to accept transfer of approximately 18.3 hectares of Lot 9, District Lot 90, Galiano Island, Cowichan District, Plan 31200, (PID 000-851-035) and part of Lot A, District Lots 88 and 89, Galiano Island, Cowichan District, Plan VIP68079, (PID 024-351-041), subject to:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The release of the rent charge and related easements on the title of Lot A and any other charges determined, through legal review, to be problematic for the Trust Fund Board;</li> <li>2. Establishing legal access for the Trust Fund Board to the most eastern part of Lot A;</li> <li>3. Receipt of \$30,000 upon transfer of the land, with at least \$15,000 to be held in a pooled Nature Reserve Management Fund, and \$10,000 to \$15,000 to be put towards the development of a management plan and management activities for the nature reserve;</li> <li>4. Staff reaching mutual agreement with the water license holders to limit the impact of accessing and maintaining the permitted water works;</li> <li>5. Agreement with the Society that the portion of the proposed Emergency Access over the nature reserve would be used only in the case of emergency;</li> <li>6. Written agreement with the Society about the use and maintenance of the pagoda;</li> <li>7. Installation of boundary and corner pin markers at the time of survey at the expense of the applicant (locations to be determined in consultation with ITF staff); and</li> <li>8. Final approval of the Trust Fund Board of the final survey plan, transfer agreement and all other associated agreements.</li> </ol> |
|                                                      | 2018/03/01        | Contacted by CMS re: next steps, and confirmed importance of having preliminary survey completed, and ensuring proposed layout is registrable.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|                                                      | 2019/07/24        | Received subdivision proposal plan from the planning department.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|                                                      | 2020/09/08        | Applicant provided a revised proposal to the Galiano Island Local Trust Committee. The revised proposal is consistent with the conservation proposal submitted to the ITC Board.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|                                                      | 2020/12/10        | File transferred to TAS Director Frater for project management due to declared conflict of interest by ITC Manager Kate Emmings.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |



## Public Acquisitions Update January 26, 2021

|                                                |            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|------------------------------------------------|------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Sandy Beach (Area E)</b><br>(Keats) 3.3 ha. | 2014/09/18 | It was MOVED and SECONDED, that the Trust Fund Board approve the conservation proposal submitted by the Convention of Baptist Churches of British Columbia to transfer Area E (Sandy Beach), approximately 3.3 hectares of DL 696, Group 1 NWD, Keats Island (PID: 014-385-694) to the Trust Fund Board for protection as a nature reserve. |
|                                                | 2015/03/02 | Consultant has indicated that the landowners would like a covenant registered on the land at the time of transfer. ITC has approached Gambier Island Conservancy (GIC) and Sunshine Coast Conservation Association (SCCA). GIC has declined, but SCCA is potentially interested.                                                            |
|                                                | 2015/05/07 | SCCA agrees to hold covenant; suggests TLC as a co-holder as they have worked together before.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|                                                | 2015/08/18 | Draft conservation covenant provided to ITC staff for review.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|                                                | 2015/08/26 | Edits to covenant provided to applicant and covenant holders for review.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|                                                | 2015/12/15 | Comments on covenant draft received from TLC.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|                                                | 2015/01/12 | Covenant revised with TLC edits and returned to TLC and SCCA for comment. TLC is happy with the draft. SCCA has sent the covenant for legal review, still awaiting SCCA comments.                                                                                                                                                           |
|                                                | 2016/02/10 | SCCA comments received.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|                                                | 2016/03/04 | ITF responded to SCCA edits. SCCA reviewing with lawyer.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|                                                | 2016/04/11 | Requested that landowner contract development of baseline report for covenant.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|                                                | 2016/06/05 | SCCA comments received for covenant.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|                                                | 2016/10/05 | Draft 3 covenant sent to covenant holders for review. TLC and SCCA have agreed to the draft.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|                                                | 2016/02/10 | Draft Bylaws for DL 696 received.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|                                                | 2017/03/02 | Covenant sent for legal review.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|                                                | 2017/04/13 | Revised covenant draft sent to TLC and SCCA. Comments received from both agencies.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|                                                | 2017/08/31 | Edits made to covenant and reviewed by legal. Draft 5 sent to TLC and SCCA for review. TLC has no further comment; awaiting SCCA comment. Both TLC and SCCA have requested a site visit.                                                                                                                                                    |
|                                                | 2017/09/07 | Draft baseline report received from the applicant.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|                                                | 2017/10/24 | Feedback on baseline report submitted to applicant and revisions requested.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|                                                | 2018/03/13 | Email from Island Planner indicates that the rezoning application will move to a community information meeting and public hearing for bylaw 143 on April 18, 2018. The Island Planner has requested that the applicant contact ITC staff regarding requirements for land transfer and covenant prior to April 18.                           |
|                                                | 2018/04/24 | Notice received from GM Planner that GM LTC gave third reading to Proposed Bylaw No. 143 and that applicant is now finalizing plans to subdivide/transfer the Sandy Beach Nature Reserve.                                                                                                                                                   |
|                                                | 2018/05/28 | Site visit with ITC staff, trustees & SCCA                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |



## Public Acquisitions Update January 26, 2021

|                            |            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|----------------------------|------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Sandy Beach (Cont.)</b> | 2018/06/14 | Staff requested applicant provide legal access to Sandy Beach through private land from the proposed Sandy Beach Nature Reserve (to utilize existing trail).                                                    |
|                            | 2018/07/19 | Next draft of baseline received and provided to covenant holders for feedback.                                                                                                                                  |
|                            | 2018/08/01 | Applicant confirms that they are willing to provide a Statutory Right of Way for Sandy Beach access.                                                                                                            |
|                            | 2018/08/28 | Baseline report feedback provided to applicant and biologist for review and revision.                                                                                                                           |
|                            | 2018/09/12 | ITC lawyer drafting Statutory Right of Way.                                                                                                                                                                     |
|                            | 2019/01/04 | Applicant's biologist revised draft baseline report. Forwarded baseline to covenant holder for review.                                                                                                          |
|                            | 2019/02/22 | Statutory Right of Way reviewed by legal council and forwarded to covenant holder for review                                                                                                                    |
|                            | 2019/04/08 | Applicant advised Statutory Right of Way and Survey are pending review by their legal council                                                                                                                   |
|                            | 2019/05/10 | Applicant attended the site with TLC staff and subsequently advised there may be an existing trail that provides access to the beach and a Statutory Right of Way may not be required.                          |
|                            | 2019/05/21 | Staff from TLC confirmed the viability of the trail, but could not confirm if the trail is on the proposed nature reserve or on the adjacent hydro right of way.                                                |
|                            | 2019/06/18 | The applicant was requested to confirm the location of the recently identified trail, and if possible to identify the trail on the pending land survey.                                                         |
|                            | 2019/07/05 | The applicant asked the surveyors to include the location of the trail and has provided pictures of the trail.                                                                                                  |
|                            | 2019/11/18 | Received survey from the Applicant. Also notified that a new trail has been developed to access the beach within the proposed Sandy Beach Nature Reserve.                                                       |
|                            | 2019/11/20 | Received a draft Transfer Agreement from the applicant.                                                                                                                                                         |
|                            | 2019/12/19 | Met on site with applicant to review the location of the newly developed beach access trail.                                                                                                                    |
|                            | 2019/12/30 | Transfer Agreement reviewed and sent for legal advice. Issues identified with charges registered on the land title and the applicant notified of concerns.                                                      |
|                            | 2020/01/08 | Legal review of Transfer Agreement completed and edits provided to the Applicant.                                                                                                                               |
|                            | 2020/01/21 | Applicant has requested a meeting to go over edits to the Transfer agreement, response sent Jan 28. Ongoing communications occurring regarding the agreement and charges on the land title.                     |
|                            | 2020/04/23 | ITC Staff begin a conversation with BC Hydro regarding removal of BC Hydro Statutory Rights of Way.                                                                                                             |
|                            | 2020/06/04 | Staff met with applicant by conference call to discuss outstanding Transfer Agreement issues.                                                                                                                   |
|                            | 2020/06/24 | BC Hydro staff respond with information about mechanisms for discharge of existing Statutory Rights of Way and reregistration of a revised Statutory Right of Way.                                              |
|                            | 2020/06/29 | Final agreement reached on the Transfer Agreement. ITC staff to add it to the July ITC meeting agenda. Agreement from all parties to finalize the conservation covenant within a year of transferring the land. |



## Public Acquisitions Update January 26, 2021

|                                        |            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|----------------------------------------|------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Sandy Beach (Cont.)</b>             | 2020/07/06 | Staff respond to BC Hydro process regarding Statutory Rights of Way and request further information from the landowners regarding cost recovery for required surveys and fees.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|                                        | 2020/07/14 | <b>ITC-2020-018</b><br><b>It was MOVED and SECONDED,</b><br>that the Islands Trust Conservancy Board direct the Chair to sign the Transfer Agreement, between the Convention of Baptist Churches of British Columbia and the Islands Trust Conservancy, dated July 14, 2020, for the land identified as Lot 1 on Subdivision Plan EPP89532 and that the Islands Trust Conservancy Board direct staff to bring recommendations to the Board regarding the use of the \$12,000 contribution from the Convention of Baptist Churches. |
|                                        | 2020/09/16 | Applicant is awaiting subdivision approval from Minsitry of Transportation and Infrastructure which is required to transfer the land to the ITC. The approving officer is away until September 21.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|                                        | 2020/10/21 | Applicant submitted all required documents to the Lands Titles Office for registration.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|                                        | 2020/12/18 | Sandy Beach (Lot 1) transferred to ITC. Acquisitioin file to be closed and remaining covenant details transferred to Public Covenant Report.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|                                        | 2021/01/06 | \$12,000 Contribution transferred to ITC. Staff will initiate development of Property Management Fund Guidelines for ITC Board Review.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>Current Total ITC Acquisitions:</b> |            | <b>30 (note Valens Brook Nature Reserve is 2 parcels, but counted as 1 Nature Reserve)</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |





## PUBLIC COVENANTS UPDATE January 26, 2021

| Property Name and Island                                     | Date (yyyy/mm/dd) | Notes                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>NAPTEP COVENANTS</b>                                      |                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <i>25 NAPTEP Covenants on title, 2 current applications.</i> |                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>Moss Mountain Covenant</b><br>Salt Spring Island (45 ha)  | 2020/09/10        | Application received.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|                                                              | 2020/11/24        | <b>ITC-2020-037</b><br><b>It was MOVED and SECONDED,</b> that the Islands Trust Conservancy Board approve the conservation proposal submitted by Gay Young to place a NAPTEP covenant on approximately 45 ha on Salt Spring Island, PID: 006-760-112, LOT 12, SECTIONS 64, 65, 66, 67 AND 68, SOUTH SALT SPRING ISLAND, COWICHAN DISTRICT, PLAN 1914.                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|                                                              | 2020/12/02        | <b>TC-2020-111</b><br><b>It was Moved by Trustee Stamford and Seconded by Trustee Fenton,</b> that the Islands Trust Council request the Secretary issue a Natural Area Protection Tax Exemption Certificate for the covenanted portion of the property described as "Lot 12, Sections 64, 65, 66, 67 and 68, South Salt Spring Island, Cowichan District, Plan 1914, Parcel Identifier 006-760-112" subject to registration of a conservation covenant and completion of a baseline inventory report consistent with the standards developed for NAPTEP. |
|                                                              | 2020/12/15        | Referred for information to the Salt Spring Island Local Trust Committee.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>R Leader Covenant</b><br>Salt Spring Island (3.54 ha)     | 2020/06/16        | Application received.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|                                                              | 2020/11/24        | <b>ITC-IC-2020-039</b><br><b>It was MOVED and SECONDED,</b> that the Islands Trust Conservancy Board approve the conservation proposal submitted by Robert Leader to place a NAPTEP covenant on approximately 5 ha on Salt Spring Island, PID: 000-395-081, LOT 2, SECTION 72, SOUTH SALT SPRING ISLAND, COWICHAN DISTRICT, PLAN 36292 Except Plan 40974                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|                                                              | 2020/12/02        | <b>TC-2020-112</b><br><b>It was Moved by Trustee Stamford and Seconded by Trustee Fast,</b><br>That the Islands Trust Council request the Secretary issue a Natural Area Protection Tax Exemption Certificate for the covenanted portion of the property described as "Lot 2, Section 72, South Salt Spring Island, Cowichan District, Plan 36292 Except Plan 40974, Parcel Identifier 000-395-081" subject to registration of a conservation covenant and completion of a baseline inventory report consistent with the standards developed for NAPTEP.  |
|                                                              | 2020/12/15        | Referred for information to the Salt Spring Island Local Trust Committee.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |



## PUBLIC COVENANTS UPDATE January 26, 2021

| Property Name and Island                                                                                           | Date (yyyy/mm/dd) | Notes                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>(51 regular covenants on title, 1 regular public covenants in progress, 3 in-camera covenants in progress.)</i> |                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Brooks Point Covenant</b><br>South Pender Island<br>(1.17 ha, 6.02 ha if combined with surrounding covenants)   | 2014/03/23        | It was MOVED and SECONDED, that the Trust Fund Board agrees to hold a covenant on the 2010 addition to Brooks Point Regional Park, South Pender Island, subject to agreement on the terms of the covenant and a satisfactory baseline report, and directs staff to continue working with CRD Parks and partners to determine the best way to covenant the three protected areas at Gowlland and Brooks Points. |
|                                                                                                                    | 2014/04/08        | Staff provide CRD staff with a template covenant for review.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|                                                                                                                    | 2014/04/15        | Staff met with partners to discuss combining covenants for the Brooks Point and Gowlland Point properties.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|                                                                                                                    | 2014/05/22        | Covenant Draft 1 sent to PICA, Friends of Brooks Point, HAT and CRD.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|                                                                                                                    | 2014/08/01        | CRD response to Covenant Draft 1 received.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|                                                                                                                    | 2014/08/19        | ITC/HAT/PICA express concerns to CRD with respect to Management Plan approval and other selected clauses.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|                                                                                                                    | 2014/08/20        | Baseline Report completed.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|                                                                                                                    | 2014/08/22        | CRD respond to ITC/HAT/PICA concerns.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|                                                                                                                    | 2014/09/17        | ITF/HAT/PICA response re draft covenant sent to CRD.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|                                                                                                                    | 2014/10/08        | Kate Emmings appointed to the Brooks Point Management Plan advisory group by the CRD.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|                                                                                                                    | 2014/10/16        | ITF staff attended CRD Parks Open House for public review of the Brooks Point Management Plan update.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|                                                                                                                    | 2014/12/03        | CRD submit revised covenant draft to ITC and HAT.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|                                                                                                                    | 2014/12/10        | CRD Board approves revised Management Plan.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|                                                                                                                    | 2014/12/12        | Covenant sent to legal counsel for review.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|                                                                                                                    | 2014/12/18        | Covenant revisions and comments sent to CRD.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|                                                                                                                    | 2015/07/29        | Met with the CRD to discuss the covenant. There are several unresolved clauses.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|                                                                                                                    | 2015/08/28        | Met with PICA and HAT. Agreed that we were at an impasse and required more direction from PICA.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|                                                                                                                    | 2015/09/02        | CRD returned a covenant draft for review, staff are concerned with several clauses, including the strength of restrictions and the enforcement mechanisms.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|                                                                                                                    | 2015/09/09        | Staff provided a briefing to PICA requesting info about the type of covenant contemplated. Staff updated the CRD that a response to the covenant draft would be post-poned until further information is available from PICA.                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|                                                                                                                    | 2015/09/24        | Staff met with HAT, Friends of Brooks Point (Paul Petrie) and the CRD to discuss covenant concerns. CRD staff agreed to revise covenant and circulate.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|                                                                                                                    | 2015/10/28        | Staff met with HAT and CRD staff to review revised covenant draft and CRD will do further revision and circulate.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |



## PUBLIC COVENANTS UPDATE

### January 26, 2021

| Property Name and Island                                                                                          | Date (yyyy/mm/dd) | Notes                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                                                                                   | 2015/12/18        | CRD Staff provided revised covenant.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|                                                                                                                   | 2016/01/25        | ITF/HAT responded to CRD revisions.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|                                                                                                                   | 2016/07/15        | CRD Staff provide a revised version of the covenant for further review.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|                                                                                                                   | 2016/08/16        | HAT/ITF/CRD staff meet to discuss CRD edits. HAT/ITC agree to add definition regarding the permitted activities and will forward legal edits. CRD to re-approach NCC and TLC regarding process for discharge of prior covenants.                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|                                                                                                                   | 2016/11/28        | ITF/HAT forwarded the draft list of restricted and permitted uses for CRD review.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|                                                                                                                   | 2016/01/11        | CRD response received, ITF/HAT to forward revised covenant draft for CRD review. Conversations ongoing regarding details.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|                                                                                                                   | 2017/09/07        | Brooks Point covenant revised and reviewed by ITF legal and HAT.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|                                                                                                                   | 2017/09/21        | Revised Brooks Point covenant sent to CRD Parks for review                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|                                                                                                                   | 2018/06/14        | Revised covenant received from the CRD, currently under review.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|                                                                                                                   | 2018/07/06        | Legal review of covenant identifies ongoing concerns.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|                                                                                                                   | 2018/07/31        | CRD notified of ITC covenant concerns and meeting of all parties with legal representatives requested.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|                                                                                                                   | 2019/05/01        | ITC provided reviewed covenant to CRD with a request to meet with all parties and legal counsel.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|                                                                                                                   | 2020/12/23        | Revised draft covenant received from CRD for review. Staff to meet with HAT to discuss next steps in early February.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>Earl Batista Covenant<br/>Salt Spring Island</b><br>Property size:<br>(0.85 Ha)<br>(previously 200 Collins Rd) | 2019/07/16        | It was moved and seconded that the Islands Trust Conservancy Board approve the conservation proposal submitted by Jordan Litke on behalf of Manuel and Cythia Batista, approximately 0.85 ha on Collins Road, Salt Spring Island: PID 009-595-694, Section 3, Range 2 West, North Salt Spring Island, Cowichan District, Except part in plan 3985, subject to the removal of any vehicles or equipment that are located in the covenant area. |
|                                                                                                                   | 2019/07/25        | Staff provided applicant with a covenant template for review.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|                                                                                                                   | 2019/08/27        | Development Variance Permit approved by Salt Spring Local Trust Committee                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|                                                                                                                   | 2019/10/01        | Comments received on Draft 1 of the covenant.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|                                                                                                                   | 2019/10/04        | Draft 2 of the covenant sent to Applicant for review.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|                                                                                                                   | 2019/11/05        | Baseline Report received. Comments provided Nov. 7, 2019.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|                                                                                                                   | 2019/11/25        | Revised, Final Baseline Report received.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |



## PUBLIC COVENANTS UPDATE January 26, 2021

| Property Name and Island                                                                                                       | Date (yyyy/mm/dd) | Notes                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Earl Batista Covenant (cont.)</b>                                                                                           | 2019/12/16        | Phone call with landholder regarding covenant terms.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|                                                                                                                                | 2020/01/20        | Continuing discussion regarding landholder's concerns with the terms and definitions in the covenant.                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|                                                                                                                                | 2020/03/12        | Land holder has decided to go ahead with the covenant as drafted. Staff is awaiting final survey and then will proceed with legal review.                                                                                                                                                         |
|                                                                                                                                | 2020/03/31        | Survey plan of covenant area received.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|                                                                                                                                | 2020/03/21        | Draft covenant updated and sent for legal review.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|                                                                                                                                | 2020/06/18        | Final covenant draft sent to applicant for review. Applicant expresses desire to call it the 'Earl Batista Covenant'.                                                                                                                                                                             |
|                                                                                                                                | 2020/06/25        | ITC staff and applicant agree on final covenant. Covenant provided to ITC Board for approval, July 14.                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|                                                                                                                                | 2020/07/14        | ITC Board approved signing covenant upon confirmation that garbage noted in the Baseline Report had been removed from the covenant area, and corollary updating of Baseline Report.                                                                                                               |
|                                                                                                                                | 2020/07/29        | Landowner indicated that garbage had been removed and staff agreed to conduct site visit to confirm.                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|                                                                                                                                | 2020/08/21        | EPS and CMOS visited the property and found that the boundary lines had been misinterpreted by the landowner, and the garbage (abandoned tent camp) remains in the covenant area. Landowner will now coordinate removal, and confirmation / updated Baseline Report using independent contractor. |
|                                                                                                                                | 2020/09/15        | Landowner sent photos of garbage being removed, EPS confirmed that condition has now been met.                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|                                                                                                                                | 2020/09/30        | Updated baseline report, sent final covenant draft to landowner's agent; discussion about order of registration and whether old charges will be discharged from title upon subdivision.                                                                                                           |
|                                                                                                                                | 2020/10/21        | Confirmed with landowner's agent that all is complete from ITC perspective, and we do not require undertaking to secure covenant registration after subdivision registration.                                                                                                                     |
| <b>ITC NATURE RESERVES WITH COVENANTS OUTSTANDING</b>                                                                          |                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <i>22 Nature Reserves have covenants, 6 Nature Reserves are without covenants, 2 ITC Nature Reserve covenants in progress.</i> |                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |



## PUBLIC COVENANTS UPDATE January 26, 2021

| Property Name and Island                                       | Date (yyyy/mm/dd) | Notes                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Sandy Beach Nature Reserve</b><br>Keats Island<br>(3.3 ha.) | 2015/03/02        | Consultant has indicated that the landowners would like a covenant registered on the land at the time of transfer. ITC has approached Gambier Island Conservancy (GIC) and Sunshine Coast Conservation Association (SCCA). GIC has declined, but SCCA is potentially interested. |
|                                                                | 2015/05/07        | SCCA agrees to hold covenant; suggests TLC as a co-holder as they have worked together before.                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|                                                                | 2015/08/18        | Draft conservation covenant provided to ITC staff for review.                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|                                                                | 2015/08/26        | Edits to covenant provided to applicant and covenant holders for review.                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|                                                                | 2015/12/15        | Comments on covenant draft received from TLC.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|                                                                | 2015/01/12        | Covenant revised with TLC edits and returned to TLC and SCCA for comment. TLC is happy with the draft. SCCA has sent the covenant for legal review, still awaiting SCCA comments.                                                                                                |
|                                                                | 2016/02/10        | SCCA comments received.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|                                                                | 2016/03/04        | ITF responded to SCCA edits. SCCA reviewing with lawyer.                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|                                                                | 2016/04/11        | Requested that landowner contract development of baseline report for covenant.                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|                                                                | 2016/06/05        | SCCA comments received for covenant.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|                                                                | 2016/10/05        | Draft 3 covenant sent to covenant holders for review. TLC and SCCA have agreed to the draft.                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|                                                                | 2017/03/02        | Covenant sent for legal review.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|                                                                | 2017/04/13        | Revised covenant draft sent to TLC and SCCA. Comments received from both agencies.                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|                                                                | 2017/08/31        | Edits made to covenant and reviewed by legal. Draft 5 sent to TLC and SCCA for review. TLC has no further comment; awaiting SCCA comment. Both TLC and SCCA have requested a site visit.                                                                                         |
|                                                                | 2017/09/07        | Draft baseline report received from the applicant.                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|                                                                | 2017/10/24        | Feedback on baseline report submitted to applicant and revisions requested.                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|                                                                | 2018/05/28        | Site visit with ITC staff, trustees & SCCA                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|                                                                | 2018/07/19        | Next draft of baseline received and provided to covenant holders for feedback.                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|                                                                | 2018/08/28        | Baseline report feedback provided to applicant and biologist for review and revision.                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|                                                                | 2019/01/04        | Applicant's biologist revised draft baseline report. Forwarded baseline to covenant holder for review.                                                                                                                                                                           |
|                                                                | 2019/11/18        | Received survey from the Applicant. Also notified that a new trail has been developed to access the beach within the proposed Sandy Beach Nature Reserve.                                                                                                                        |





## PUBLIC COVENANTS UPDATE January 26, 2021

| Property Name and Island                                                | Date (yyyy/mm/dd) | Notes                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                                         | 2019/12/19        | Met on site with applicant to review the location of the newly developed beach access trail.                                                                                   |
|                                                                         | 2020/04/23        | ITC Staff begin a conversation with BC Hydro regarding removal of BC Hydro Statutory Rights of Way.                                                                            |
|                                                                         | 2020/06/24        | BC Hydro staff respond with information about mechanisms for discharge of existing Statutory Rights of Way and reregistration of a revised Statutory Right of Way.             |
|                                                                         | 2020/07/06        | Staff respond to BC Hydro process regarding Statutory Rights of Way and request further information from the landowners regarding cost recovery for required surveys and fees. |
|                                                                         | 2020/12/18        | Land transfer complete. Covenant still to be finalized as per Transfer Agreement by Dec. 18, 2021.                                                                             |
| <b>Fairyslipper Forest Nature Reserve</b><br>Thetis Island<br>(16.6 ha) | 2018/03/20        | ThINC Board approves resolution to hold a covenant on Fairyslipper Forest.                                                                                                     |
|                                                                         | 2018/03/21        | CCLT Board approves resolution to hold a covenant on Fairyslipper Forest.                                                                                                      |
|                                                                         | 2018/04/03        | TFB approves negotiation of conservation covenant in favour of ThINC and CCLT.                                                                                                 |
|                                                                         | 2018/04/06        | First draft of ITC template covenant sent to partners. Trail relocation is needed before finalizing baseline report.                                                           |
|                                                                         | 2018/10/13        | Hosted Management Plan Open House on Thetis Island.                                                                                                                            |
|                                                                         | 2019/02/22        | Draft management plan and baseline report sent to ThINC and CCLT staff for review.                                                                                             |
|                                                                         | 2019/03/11        | Contractor and ITC complete ThINC and CCLT's requested revisions to management plan and baseline report. The baseline report will be finalized once the trail is relocated.    |
|                                                                         | 2019/03/19        | ITC consults with Islands Trust's Senior Intergovernmental Policy Advisor on opportunities to introduce First Nations content throughout management plan.                      |
|                                                                         | 2019/03/20        | Further revisions completed by ITC and contractor to address additional edits from ThINC.                                                                                      |
|                                                                         | 2019/05/08        | ITC completes addition of First Nations content throughout management plan and content is reviewed by Islands Trust's Senior Intergovernmental Policy Advisor.                 |
|                                                                         | 2019/05/12        | Contractor approves First Nations content added to management plan by ITC.                                                                                                     |



## PUBLIC COVENANTS UPDATE January 26, 2021

| Property Name and Island                             | Date (yyyy/mm/dd)              | Notes                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Fairyslipper Forest Nature Reserve</b><br>(Cont.) | 2019/05/21                     | ITC Board approves management plan with minor revisions.                                                                                                                                                         |
|                                                      | 2019/06/12                     | ThINC Board approves revised management plan.                                                                                                                                                                    |
|                                                      | 2019/09/26                     | CCLT Board approves revised management plan. Staff posted Management Plan to the website.                                                                                                                        |
|                                                      | 2020/02/03                     | Trail reclamation completed by contracted trail builder, Penelakut youth and volunteer labour. A Statutory Right of Way is required from the adjacent property where the trailhead and parking area are planned. |
|                                                      | 2020/03/19                     | ThINC is working with the Thetis Island Residents and Ratepayers Association to obtain a trail license over adjacent private lands for access and parking for the Fairyslipper Forest Nature Reserve.            |
|                                                      | 2020/05/08                     | ThINC informed ITC that the trail license is not proceeding.                                                                                                                                                     |
|                                                      | 2020/05/26                     | ITC Board directs staff to work with ThINC on an appropriate trail access.                                                                                                                                       |
|                                                      | 2020/07/14                     | Landowner signs Trail Licence Agreement with TIRRA (Thetis Island Residents and Ratepayers Association). Staff continues to work with owner to develop permanent legal access.                                   |
| <b>Total</b>                                         | <b>76 covenants registered</b> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |

**Islands Trust Conservancy Expenditure Tracking 2020-2021**

| GL                      | Description                     | Budget                 | Revenue    | Total Available | Spent      | Remaining  | % Remaining | Committed Funds |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------|------------------------|------------|-----------------|------------|------------|-------------|-----------------|
| 54500-210               | Communications                  | \$ 13,000              |            | \$ 13,000       | \$7,497    | \$ 5,503   | 42%         | \$ 2,333        |
| 61100-210               | Board Honoraria                 | \$ 6,600               |            | \$ 6,600        | \$3,700    | \$ 2,900   | 44%         | \$ 1,850        |
| 61200-210               | Board Meeting Expense           | \$ 13,850              |            | \$ 13,850       | \$67       | \$ 13,783  | 100%        |                 |
| 61210-210               | Board Training & Conferences    | \$ 4,000               |            | \$ 4,000        |            | \$ 4,000   | 100%        |                 |
| 61300-210               | Property Management             | \$ 72,000              |            | \$ 72,000       | \$14,546   | \$ 57,454  | 80%         | \$ 50,546       |
| 61500-210               | Cons Planning / Land Securement | \$ 15,000              |            | \$ 15,000       | \$10,170   | \$ 4,830   | 32%         | \$ -            |
| 63000-210               | Legal                           | \$ 8,000               |            | \$ 8,000        | \$12,639   | \$ (4,639) | -58%        | \$ 4,884        |
| 61600-210               | Ecosystem Mapping               | \$ 15,000              |            | \$ 15,000       |            | \$ 15,000  | 100%        |                 |
| 73001-210-8040          | Photo Management                | \$ 2,750               |            | \$ 2,750        | \$894      | \$ 1,856   | 67%         |                 |
| 80300-210               | Mobile Devices                  | \$ 2,400               |            | \$ 2,400        | \$1,485    | \$ 915     | 38%         | \$ 1,006        |
| 81300-210               | Training & Conferences          | \$ 4,168               |            | \$ 4,168        | \$1,019    | \$ 3,149   | 76%         | \$165           |
| 81305-210               | Travel for Training             | \$ 2,750               |            | \$ 2,750        | \$20       | \$ 2,730   | 99%         | \$ 300          |
| 82300-210               | Travel                          | \$ 6,245               |            | \$ 6,245        | \$6,302    | \$ (57)    | -1%         | \$ 95           |
| 73001-210-8053          | Species at Risk Program         | \$ -                   | \$ 187,000 | \$ 187,000      | \$60,599   | \$ 126,401 | 68%         | \$ 107,401      |
|                         |                                 | \$ 165,763             | \$ 187,000 | \$ 352,763      | \$ 118,940 | \$ 233,823 | 66%         | \$ 168,580      |
| <b>Restricted Funds</b> |                                 | <b>Opening Balance</b> |            |                 |            |            |             |                 |
|                         | Alton Maintenance Account       | \$ 91,665.57           | \$ 15,948  | \$ 107,614      | \$ 1,052   | \$ 106,562 |             | \$ 425          |
|                         | Ruby Alton Endowment Fund       | \$ 125,191             | \$ 13,479  | \$ 138,670      |            | \$ 138,670 |             |                 |
|                         | Opportunity Fund                | \$ 23,974              | \$ 3,608   | \$ 27,583       | \$ 8,516   | \$ 19,067  |             | \$ 4,999        |
|                         | Covenant Mgmt and Defence Fund  | \$ 111,786             | \$ 3,487   | \$ 115,273      |            | \$ 115,273 |             |                 |
|                         | Property Management Fund        | \$ 12,000              |            | \$ 12,000       |            | \$ 12,000  |             | \$ 2,000        |
|                         | Lasqueti Island Acq Fund        | \$ 33,069              | \$ 2,224   | \$ 35,293       | \$ 1       | \$ 35,292  |             |                 |
|                         | Gambier Island Acq Fund         | \$ 124,243             | \$ 5,767   | \$ 130,009      |            | \$ 130,009 |             |                 |
|                         | Morrison Waxler Legacy Fund     | \$ 20,262              | \$ 19      | \$ 20,281       |            | \$ 20,281  |             |                 |
|                         | Thetis Island Acq Fund          | \$ 1,293               | \$ 1       | \$ 1,294        |            | \$ 1,294   |             |                 |
|                         | McFadden Creek                  | \$ 23,628              | \$ 23      | \$ 23,651       | \$ 25      | \$ 23,626  |             |                 |

Updated: January 13, 2021



## Guidance for Open Meetings and Electronic Meetings under Current PHO Orders and Ministerial Order 192

### Introduction

The December 2, 2020 Provincial Health Officer (PHO) Order on [Gatherings and Events](#) requires local governments to make some changes to how meetings and public hearings are currently conducted. The public is now restricted from attending all local government meetings and public hearings in person.

The [COVID-19 Related Measures Act](#) (CRMA) and [Ministerial Order M192](#) (Order M192) provide flexibility for local governments to shift how they are conducting meetings and hearings based on the current PHO recommendations and local circumstances. Order M192 provides that a council or body is not required to allow members of the public to attend a meeting if, despite the best efforts of the council or body, the attendance of members of the public cannot be accommodated at a meeting that would otherwise be held in accordance with the applicable requirements or recommendations under the *Public Health Act*.

#### Current PHO requirements under the Order on Gatherings and Events:

- Prevents public attendance at any meetings or public hearings.
- All meeting participants (including council and board members and staff) are strongly encouraged to attend electronically.

#### Under CRMA and MO192:

- Local governments must continue to make “best efforts” based on local circumstances to inform the public of meetings and provide alternative ways for the public to provide comment on agenda topics (e.g. email, letter, phone) or participate electronically (if available).
- Local government elected officials are encouraged to meet electronically.
- Local governments are encouraged to hold electronic public hearings.
- Local governments must review or develop a resolution with respect to open and electronic meetings, and state how they will continue to meet the principles of openness, transparency and accountability in the current circumstances.
- All other rules such as prescribed in legislation or local government procedure bylaws continue to apply such as: notice requirements, voting rules, and recording of meeting minutes.

Local government by-elections are exempt from the PHO Order on Gatherings and Events.

The Ministry of Municipal Affairs (Ministry) encourages local governments to monitor the most recent orders from the PHO and contact their local medical health officer for further questions about specific circumstances in their region.

The guidance below provides practical advice to local governments while operating under Order M192 and measures that will help ensure compliance with PHO orders, support PHO recommendations and uphold the principles of local government openness, accountability, accessibility and transparency.

### **Open Meetings**

Order M192 requires local governments to undertake “best efforts” to meet the legislative requirements for open meetings so the public can continue to participate and understand local government decision-making in a way that is meaningful for them.

The current Provincial Health Officer (PHO) Order on [Gatherings and Events](#) prevents in-person public attendance at council or board meetings. The Office of the Provincial Health Officer strongly encourages electronic meetings, however local government staff and elected officials may continue to hold in-person council and board meetings as necessary.

Local governments that hold electronic meetings where members of the public are not able to hear, or watch and hear, parts of the meeting that are open to the public, must pass a resolution to provide a rationale for the change and describe what measures are being taken to meet the principles of openness, transparency and accessibility. These measures will vary depending on local circumstances. Local governments with questions about the safety of meetings in their region may wish to reach out to their local medical health officer.

The Ministry recommends revisiting the resolution periodically, based on the current PHO recommendations and local circumstances to determine whether changes are needed. Local governments with questions about the safety of meetings in their region may wish to reach out to their local medical health officer.

#### **Best efforts from local governments may include:**

- Communicate to local government staff, elected officials and the public about how the local government is meeting the current PHO requirements and recommendations for meetings.
- Provide public notice for meetings including how the public can provide input on agenda topics.
- Offer alternative means by which the public can provide input on agenda topics before or during a meeting to increase accessibility (e.g. email, online submission form, phone or written letter).
- Consider technology for enabling the public to be present by electronic means (if available) (e.g. videoconference or real-time question and answer).
- Adjust the agenda and meeting schedules so that matters that are likely to be controversial or attract high public interest are the subject of a separate meeting.
- Provide draft agendas, minutes and archived video of meetings (if available) to the public to facilitate public understanding of local government decision making.
- Communicate any changes to meeting approaches to the public.
- Document and be able to provide information to the public about what efforts have been made to be open, transparent and accountable to the public.

#### **Additional tips:**

- Actively promote other means for the public to participate in council or board meetings.
- Explore options for expanded on-line public engagement opportunities for specific projects and issues (particularly those that may be potentially controversial).
- Consider ways in which questions not answered at the meeting may be made public.



- Provide alternative methods for delegations to present (e.g., written; electronic; drop-box; pre-recorded video or real-time video presentation).
- Post draft minutes of open meetings on the local government website and at the public notice posting place or other designated places after the meeting.
- If council or board members or local government staff attend electronically, reflect disconnections and connections in the meeting minutes.

For more information about legislative open meeting requirements please see:

<https://www2.gov.bc.ca/gov/content/governments/local-governments/governance-powers/councils-boards/meetings/rules>

## **Electronic Meetings**

Order M192 provides the flexibility for local governments to hold electronic meetings and to make “best efforts” to include the public in electronic meetings.

### **Best efforts from local governments may include:**

- Electronic meetings that resemble what one would expect in an in-person public meeting as much as possible, adhering to rules of procedural fairness. This means making best efforts to follow existing procedures and to allow members of the public to be heard.
- Communicate any changes to meeting approaches to the public.
- Explore available technology that will enable the public to hear, or watch and hear, the meeting (e.g. livestream, record and provide an archived copy on the local government website).
- Provide information to the public on how they can review agendas and minutes of meetings during this time.
- Anticipate technology issues and consider allowing additional time on the agenda to resolve technical issues, including the possible lag when live-streaming.

### **Additional tips:**

- If some members of council or board choose to attend by means of electronic communication, ensure that if quorum is lost there is a procedure in place to either suspend proceedings until quorum is achieved or cancel or postpone the meeting.
- Facilitate local government staff or delegations presenting on agenda topics to present remotely or call-in to the meeting.
- Ensure council or board members can hear members attending by electronic means.
- In the procedure bylaw, develop guidelines to assist with electronic meeting process including how the presiding member will take a vote on a motion or bylaw adoption.
- Outline the process for how members attending electronically can participate in the debate.
- Provide easy to understand information on the local government website, public notice posting place and in other community spaces so the public knows how to attend electronically (if available) including:
  - how to call in and listen if this option is available;
  - where to view a livestream or archived version of the meeting; and,
  - how to ask questions during question period if this is an option.
- Ensure the chair advises participants that the meeting is being recorded and include a statement to this effect in the agenda.

- Make archived versions of recorded meetings and meeting minutes available to the public as soon as possible after the meeting.
- Ensure publication and retention of documents and recordings of meetings comply with the *Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy Act*.

For more information about electronic meetings please see:

<https://www2.gov.bc.ca/gov/content/governments/local-governments/governance-powers/councils-boards/meetings/electronic>

## **Additional Resources:**

### **Provincial Health Officer**

- [Gatherings and Events \(Dec 2, 2020\)](#)

### **WorkSafeBC**

- [Municipalities and COVID-19 safety](#)
- [WorkSafeBC Safety Plan Template](#)
- [WorkSafeBC Signs and Templates](#)

### **BC Centre for Disease Control**

- [General COVID-19 Information](#)

### **BC Municipal Safety Association**

- [Pandemic Exposure Control COVID-19](#)

### **Government of Canada**

- [Risk assessment for mass gatherings](#)

### **World Health Organization**

- [Planning recommendations for mass gatherings](#)
- [Getting workplace ready for COVID-19](#)

### **Office of the Ombudsperson**

- [Open Meetings: Best Practices Guide for Local Governments](#)

### **AMTCO**

- [Electronic Council Meetings](#)
- [Electronic Participation Procedure](#)

### **Procedure for Electronic Participation in City Council Meetings:**

- [https://amcto.com/Resources-Publications/Resources/Electronic-Council-Meetings/Procedures for City Council Participation in Elect.aspx](https://amcto.com/Resources-Publications/Resources/Electronic-Council-Meetings/Procedures%20for%20City%20Council%20Participation%20in%20Elect.aspx)